

See discussions, stats, and author profiles for this publication at: <https://www.researchgate.net/publication/240792092>

A Bibliography of Writings About Historic Brass Instruments, 1988-89

Article in *Historic Brass Society Journal* · January 1990

DOI: 10.2153/0119900011010

CITATION

1

READS

23

1 author:



David Lasocki

Indiana University Bloomington

39 PUBLICATIONS 29 CITATIONS

SEE PROFILE

A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1988-89

David Lasocki

This bibliography is the first in what I intend to be an annual series listing recent writings about historic brass instruments. It covers brass instruments through the 19th century, and their depiction in works of art, makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices and repertory. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but reports on conferences and workshops are excluded unless they contain significant historical information. This first bibliography, covering those items from 1988 and 1989 that had reached me by late May, 1990, takes up roughly where the Fasman bibliography (cited below) leaves off. I would be grateful if readers could send me any relevant items I may have overlooked. The next installment will include any extra items for 1988-89 plus most items for 1990.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in Western European languages. All the books and articles are published; unpublished items and works-in-progress have been excluded (the Kohlenberg article cited below does list such material). For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers. The bibliographic information about theses and dissertations – except for Fasman's, which was written at the university where I work – was taken from the database *Dissertation Abstracts International* on Dialog.

For the most part the bibliography is not annotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents (when they are not obvious from the title), scope or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Alvarez, Rosario. "Las pinturas con instrumentos musicales del techo de la catedral de Teruel, documento iconográfico coetáneo de los códices de las Cantigas [The paintings with musical instruments on the ceiling of the Teruel cathedral: iconographical document contemporary with the codices of the Cantigas]." *Revista de musicología* 11, no. 1 (January-June 1988): 31-64.

Ashbee, Andrew, ed. *Records of English Court Music, Volume III (1625-1649)*. The editor (214 Malling Road, Snodland, Kent ME6 5EQ, England), 1988. [OCLC 16090406 or 20800107]

- Transcripts of Court records relating to musicians, including players of the cornetto, sackbut, and trumpet. Volumes I (1986) and II (1987) covered the years 1660-1685 and 1685-1714, respectively.
- Bachteler, Peter. See Schlemm, Horst Dietrich.
- Bahr, Edward R. *Trombone/Euphonium Discography*. Stevens Point, Wisconsin: Index House, 1988. [OCLC 18682704]
- Balthrop, Sharon Kay. *Twenty-six Two- and Three-Voiced Canons by Johann Walter Transcribed for French Horn*. M.A. thesis, North Texas State University, 1988.
- Banks, Margaret D. "Nineteenth-Century Brass Instruments at the Shrine to Music Museum." *Brass Bulletin* 61 (1988): 50-59.
- Barclay, Robert. "Ethics in the Conservation and Restoration of Brass Instruments." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 75-81.
- _____. "Reconstruction of a Natural Trumpet by Sterner of Nürnberg." *Galpin Society Journal* 42 (August 1989): 98-104.
- Barton, Peter. "The Woodham-Rodenbostel Slide Trumpet and Others, Employing the 'Clock-Spring' Mechanism." *Galpin Society Journal* 42 (August 1989): 112-20.
- Borders, James M. *European and American Wind and Percussion Instruments: Catalogue of the Stearns Collection of Musical Instruments, University of Michigan*. Ann Arbor: The University of Michigan Press, 1988. [OCLC 17767321]
- Bosch, Ben van den. See Schlemm, Horst Dietrich.
- Bowles, Edmund A. *Musical Ensembles in Festival Books, 1500-1800: An Iconographical & Documentary Survey*. Ann Arbor: UMI Research Press, 1989. [OCLC 17506246]
- Brown, Howard Mayer. "Catalogus: A Corpus of Trecento Pictures with Musical Subject Matter, Part II/4, Instalment 4." *Imago Musicae* 5 (1988): 167-241.
- Part of a catalog-in-progress of 14th-century Italian pictures; includes small black-and-white illustrations, bibliography for further reading (and viewing), and index with instruments. The earlier installments appeared in 1 (1984): 189-243; 2 (1985): 179-281; and 3 (1986): 103-87.

Burgess, Jon Wesley. *An Annotated Bibliography of Trumpet Ensemble Music (for Five or More Trumpets)*. A.Mus.D. thesis, Arizona State University, 1988. [OCLC 20059310 or 20278121]

Carter, Stewart. "Contemporary Sackbut Makers: An Update." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 1 (Summer 1989): 9-11, 13.

Updates the list of "Contemporary Makers of Reproductions" in Henry Fischer, *The Renaissance Sackbut and its Use Today* (New York, 1984), Appendix II, pp. 46-56.

Casa, Girolamo dalla. See Rosenberg, Jesse.

Ciurczak, Peter L. "The Trumpet in Baroque Opera: Its Use as a Solo, Obligato, and Ensemble Instrument—The Technical Details of Trumpet Style." *ITG Journal* 13, no. 1 (September 1988): 4-39.

Collins, Timothy A. "Gottfried Reiche: A More Complete Biography." *Bach: The Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute, Baldwin-Wallace College, Berea, Ohio* 19, no. 3 (Fall 1988): 4-16.

Adds to the biographical material in the important study by Don L. Smithers, "Gottfried Reiches Ansehen und sein Einfluss auf die Musik Johann Sebastian Bachs [Gottfried Reiche's reputation and his influence on the music of Johann Sebastian Bach]," *Bach-Jahrbuch* 73 (1987): 113-50.

Dahlqvist, Reine. *Bidrag till trumpeteten och trumpetspelets historia / Från 1500-talet till mitten av 1800-talet / Med särskild hänsyn till perioden 1740-1830* [Contribution to the history of trumpets and trumpet playing, from the 16th through the 19th centuries, especially with regard to the period 1740-1830], 2 vols. Disputationsupplaga. Skrifter från Musikvetenskapliga institutionen, Göteborg, 17. Göteborg, 1988. [OCLC 20295061]

Dalla Casa, Girolamo. See Rosenberg, Jesse.

Danner, Gregory. "Heinrich Domnich's *Méthode de premier et de second cor*: Lessons in Musicianship for Today's Student." *Horn Call* 20, no. 1 (October 1989): 47-49.

Duffin, Ross W. "The *Trompette des menestrels* in the 15th-Century *Alta capella*." *Early Music* 17, no. 3 (August 1989): 397-402.

Duffin's article and those by Myers and Polk cited below are a response to Peter Downey, "The Renaissance Slide Trumpet: Fact or Fiction?" *Early Music* 12, no. 1 (February 1984): 26-33.

- Edwards, J. Michele. "Schütz's Use of the Violone and Wind Instruments: Rereading the Evidence." *The American Organist* 23, no. 9 (September 1989): 63-65.
A reply to the Matfeld article, cited below.
- Eisensmith, Kevin. "Twenty-five Selected Pedagogical Sources for the Trumpet Instructor: An Annotated Bibliography." *ITG Journal* 14, no. 1 (September 1989): 49-53, 73.
- Everett, Tom. "A Conversation with Christian Lindberg." *ITA Journal* 17, no. 1 (Winter 1989): 22-29.
- _____. "A Handlist of Trombone Related Theses and Dissertations Published Between 1983 and 1986." *ITA Journal* 16, no. 1 (Winter 1988): 16-17.
- Fasman, Mark J. *A Selected Bibliography of Literature Related to Brass Instruments*, 2 vols. D.M. dissertation, Indiana University, 1988.
Published in 1990 by Indiana University Press, Bloomington, Indiana, under the title *Brass Bibliography: Sources on the History, Literature, Pedagogy, Performance, and Acoustics of Brass Instruments*. [OCLC 20014701]
- Fischer, Henry G. "The Tenor Sackbut of Anton Schnitzer the Elder at Nice." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 65-74.
- Giegling, Franz. See Symposion, "Mozarts Hornkonzerte."
- Godt, Irving. "Ercole's Angel Concert." *Journal of Musicology* 7, no. 3 (Summer 1989): 327-42.
Concerns a fresco in the monastery church of Santa Maria della Consolazione, Ferrara, painted in the early 16th century, probably to a commission by Ercole I d'Este.
- Goodwin, Peter. "The Venetian Connection." *Brass Bulletin* 62 (1988): 57-59.
The author's musings on his Venetian ancestors, the wind-playing members of the Bassano family.
- Gross, Ernest H., III. "The Influence of Berlioz on Contemporary Nineteenth-Century Use of Brass Instruments." *Brass Bulletin* 67 (1989): 20-31; 68 (1989): 34-39; 69 (1990): 88-92.

- Guion, David M. *The Trombone: its History and Music, 1697-1811*. New York: Gordon & Breach, 1988. [OCLC 16226762]
- Halsell, George Kay. *North Italian Sacred Ensemble Music of the First Third of the Seventeenth Century Calling for Participation by One or More Trombones: An Annotated Anthology with Historical Introduction and Commentary*. D.M.A. thesis, University of Texas at Austin, 1989.
- Hanlon, Kenneth M. *The Eighteenth-Century Trombone: A Study of its Changing Role as a Solo and Ensemble Instrument*. D.M.A. thesis, Peabody Conservatory of Music, Peabody Institute of the Johns Hopkins University, 1989.
- Hanna, Len. "The Baroque Trumpet." *Continuo* 12, no. 3 (June 1988): 2-5.
Includes an interview with Fred Holmgren.
- Harper, Thomas. *Instructions for the Trumpet*. Facsimile of the 1837 edition, with commentary on the life of Harper by John Webb and Scott Sorenson; foreword by John Webb. Homer, New York (5745 U.S. Route 11, Homer, N.Y. 13077): Spring Tree Enterprises, 1988. [OCLC 18492312]
- Heartz, Daniel. "Leutgeb and the 1762 Horn Concertos of Joseph and Johann Michael Haydn." *Mozart-Jahrbuch* 1987/88: 59-64.
- Hermann, Hans. See Schlemm, Horst Dietrich.
- Heydenreich, Johann Christian. "Ein Trompeterzeugnis aus dem Jahre 1762 [A trumpeter's testimonial from the year 1762]." *Das Orchester* 37, no. 5 (May 1989): 513.
- Hiebert, Thomas. *The Horn in Early Eighteenth-Century Dresden: The Players and their Repertory*. D.M.A. thesis, University of Wisconsin—Madison, 1989. [OCLC 20871882]
- Horn, Geoffrey Clark. *Dual "Urlinien" in the Concerto Practice of Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, as Demonstrated in the Three Concerti in E flat for Horn and Orchestra: K. 417, K. 447, and K. 495*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Michigan, 1989.
- Hughes, Willam Martin. *The Trombone in Performance of the Bass-Solo Canzonas of Girolamo Frescobaldi*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Maryland, College Park, 1988. [OCLC 19956414 or 20568924]

Ischer, Robert. "Early Music: A New Approach with Bruce Dickey." *Brass Bulletin* 67 (1989): 56-61.

Interview.

Janetzky, Kurt and Bernhard Bröchle. *The Horn*. Translated from the German by James Chater. Portland, Ore.: Amadeus Press; London: Batsford, 1988. [OCLC 18135215 or 18136803]

Translation of *Das Horn: eine kleine Chronik seines Werdens und Wirkens* (Bern & Stuttgart: Hallwag, 1977).

Janson, Peter. "The Eighteenth-Century Chorale Prelude with Solo Wind Instrument." *The Diapason* 79, no. 10 (October 1988): 10-13.

Kaye, Martin. "Future Cornett: A Personal Exploration." *Continuo* 12, no. 1 (February 1988): 14-17.

Part IV of a series on the cornetto. The first three parts were published in 10, no. 3 (December 1986): 6-10; 11, no. 1 (January 1987): 2-6; and 11, nos. 7-8 (Summer 1987): 2-5.

Kehrberg, Robert. "Trombone Degree-Related Research and Performance: A Listing from *Dissertation Abstracts*." *ITA Journal* 17, no. 2 (Spring 1989): 32-36.

Kirk, Douglas. "Cornetti and Performing Pitch of Choirs in Northern Italy and England." *The Early Brass Journal* 4 (July 1988): 3-10.

_____. "Cornetti and Renaissance Pitch Standards in Italy and Germany." *Journal de musique ancienne* 10, no. 4 (Summer 1989): 16-22.

An expanded version of the preceding article.

_____. "A Survey of Modern Cornetto Makers and their Work." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 1 (Summer 1989): 5-8.

Köhler, Wolfgang. "Die Blasinstrumente aus der *Harmonie Universelle* des Marin Mersenne und ihre Bedeutung für die Aufführungspraxis heute [The wind instruments from Marin Mersenne's *Harmonie universelle* and their significance for performance practice today]." *Tibia* 13, no. 1 (1988): 1-14.

Kohlenberg, Randy. "Update on Trombone Related Research." *ITA Journal* 17, no. 4 (Fall 1989): 22-26; 18, no. 1 (Winter 1990): 17-20.

Landmann, Ortrun. "The Dresden Hofkapelle during the Lifetime of Johann Sebastian Bach." *Early Music* 17, no. 1 (February 1989): 17-30.

- Lawson, Graeme and Geoff Egan. "Medieval Trumpet from the City of London." *Galpin Society Journal* 41 (October 1988): 63-66.
See also the article by Webb.
- Lemmon, Douglas C. "Music for Wind Ensembles from the Oettingen-Wallerstein Music Collection." *NACWPI Journal* 37, no. 2 (Winter 1988-1989): 27-36.
- Levin, Robert D. *Who Wrote the Mozart Four-Wind Concertante?* Stuyvesant, N.Y.: Pendragon Press, 1988. [OCLC 11518780]
- Lumsden, Alan. *The Sound of the Sackbut*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University College of Historic Musical Instruments, 1988. [OCLC 18747416]
- Manson, David Ross. *The Use of the Trombone in the Chamber Sonatas of Matthias Weckmann*. D.M.A. dissertation, Catholic University of America, 1989.
- Marx, Josef. "An Introduction to Mozart's 12 Duos for Two French Horns (K. 487)." *Horn Call* 19, no. 1 (October 1988): 49-65.
Written October 1947.
- Mattfeld, Victor H. "The Use of Instruments in the Music of Henrich Schütz." *The American Organist* 22, no. 3 (March 1988): 65-69.
See also the reply by Edwards, cited above.
- McCann, John R. "The Cornettino in Italy?" *The Early Brass Journal* 4 (July 1988): 1-3.
- _____. "Snakes, Trees and Flames: A Discussion of Venetian Curved Cornett Decorations." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 101-07.
- Meucci, Renato. "Roman Military Instruments and the *Lituus*." *Galpin Society Journal* 42 (August 1989): 85-97.
- Möller, Dirk. *Besetzung und Instrumentation in den Opern Georg Friedrich Händels* [Scoring and instrumentation in the operas of George Frideric Handel]. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang, 1989.
From a Hamburg University dissertation of 1988.

- Moens-Haenen, Greta. *Das Vibrato in der Musik des Barock: ein Handbuch zur Aufführungspraxis für Vokalistinnen und Instrumentalisten* [Vibrato in the music of the Baroque: a handbook on performance practice for singers and instrumentalists]. Graz, Austria: Akademische Druck- und Verlagsanstalt, 1988. [OCLC 17734531]
 Sections "Das Vibrato auf Blechblasinstrumenten [Vibrato on brass instruments]," pp. 125-26; "Der Tremulant auf Blechblasinstrumenten [The tremulant on brass instruments]," pp. 137-38.
- Müller, Thomas. "Stopping Technique in the Mozart Horn Concertos." *Brass Bulletin* 62 (1988): 29-35.
 Includes a translation of a modified version of his article listed under Symposium, "Mozarts Hornkonzerte," below.
- Myers, Herbert W. "Slide Trumpet Madness: Fact or Fiction?" *Early Music* 17, no. 3 (August 1989): 383-89.
- Nicholson, Joseph. "The History of the Trombone as a Solo Instrument." *ITA Journal* 17, no. 3 (Summer 1988): 34-36.
- Nussbaum, Jeffrey. "An Interview with Don L. Smithers." *ITG Journal* 13, no. 2 (December 1988): 11-20.
- _____. "First Annual Historic Brass Symposium." *ITG Journal* 14, no. 1 (September 1989): 37-40.
 See also his briefer report, "Historic Brass Symposium: A Synopsis," *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 1 (Summer 1989): 12.
- Pinnock, Andrew. "A Wider Role for the Flat Trumpet." *Galpin Society Journal* 42 (August 1989): 105-11.
- Pitzka, Hans. See Symposium, "Mozarts Hornkonzerte."
- Polekh, Ludmilla. "On the Problem of Improvisation Technique in Modern Performance Practice (A Study of Mozart's Concertos for the Horn)." *Horn Call* 20, no. 1 (October 1989): 41-46.
- Polk, Keith. "Augustein Schubinger and the Zinck: Innovation in Performance Practice." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 83-92.
- _____. "The Trombone, the Slide Trumpet and the Ensemble Tradition of the Early Renaissance." *Early Music* 17, no. 3 (August 1989): 389-97.

Proesmans, Klaartje. "Muziek aan het hof van Albrecht en Isabella 1598-1621. Deel I: De hofkapel van de aartshertogen en het religieuze hofceremonieel [Music at the Court of Albrecht and Isabella (1598-1621). Part I: The court chapel of the archdukes and the religious court ceremonial]." *Musica Antiqua* 6, no. 2 (May 1989): 82-86.

Raum, J. Richard. "Extending the Solo and Chamber Repertoire for the Alto Trombone from the Late Baroque and Early Classical Periods (1720-1780)." *ITA Journal* 16, no. 2 (Spring 1988): 11-23.

Rosenberg, Jesse, trans. "Il vero modo di diminuir." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 109-14.

An English translation of the treatise of that name by Girolamo dalla Casa detto da Udene (1584).

Rycroft, David. "Flat Trumpet Facts and Figures." *Galpin Society Journal* 42 (August 1989): 134-42.

Schlemm, Horst Dietrich, ed. *Posaunen in der Bibel und bei uns vor 1843* [Trombones in the Bible and with us before 1843]. Beiträge zur Geschichte evangelischer Posaunenarbeit, ed. Eduard Lohse with Manfred Glowatzki, Volrad Kluge, and Klaus Winkler, Lieferung 1. Gütersloh: Gütersloher Verlagshaus Gerd Mohn, 1989.

Contents: Hans Herrmann, "'Mit Drommeten und Posaunen' — Geistliche Blasmusik vom Alten Testament bis zur Gemeinde heute ['With trumpets and sackbuts' — Sacred wind music from the Old Testament to the Church of today]" (pp. 9-25); Peter Bachteler, "Die Kirchenmusik in Merklingen seit 1706 bis heute [Church music in Merklingen from 1706 until today]" (pp. 26-42); Ben van den Bosch, "Die Entstehung und Entwicklung der Posaunenarbeit der Brüdergemeinen in Deutschland und in aller Welt [The origin and development of the employment of the trombone by the Moravian Brethren in Germany and throughout the world]" (pp. 43-65), and Klaus Winkler, "Zur Entwicklung der Blasmusik bei den Herrnhutern im 18. Jahrhundert — Quellenkundliche Studien zu Instrumentarium, Zeremonieell und Repertoire der ersten Posaunenchoräle [On the development of the wind music of the Moravian Brethren in the 18th century — Source studies on the instrumentarium, ceremonial, and repertoire of the first trombone choirs]" (pp. 66-96).

Schulze, Hans-Joachim. "Johann Sebastian Bach's Orchestra: Some Unanswered Questions." *Early Music* 17, no. 1 (February 1989): 3-15.

Seraphinoff, Richard. "Early Horn Mouthpieces." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 93-100.

Smithers, Don L. *The Music and History of the Baroque Trumpet Before 1721*. 2nd ed. Carbondale & Edwardsville: Southern Illinois University Press; Buren, The Netherlands: Frits Knuf, 1988. [OCLC 18323228 or 21132781]

First edition supplemented by "Author's Preface to the Second Edition" (pp. 9-13) and "Addenda" (pp. 323-52).

_____. "A New Look at the Historical, Linguistic and Taxonomic Bases for the Evolution of Lip-blown Instruments from Classical Antiquity until the end of the Middle Ages." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 1 (1989): 3-64.

"The Song of the Serpent or, the Obsession of Michel Godard." *Brass Bulletin* 67 (1989): 50-54.

Interview. *Le chant du serpent* is the title of a new jazz (?) recording by Godard on serpent and tuba.

Spiessens, Godelieve. "Serpentspel te Antwerpen tijdens de 17de-18de eeuw [Serpent playing in Antwerp during the 17th and 18th centuries]." *Musica Antiqua* 5, no. 1 (February 1988): 8-11

Steele-Perkins, Crispian. "Practical Observations on Natural, Slide and Flat Trumpets." *Galpin Society Journal* 42 (August 1989): 122-27.

Stewart, Milton L. "Chamber Music for Voices with French Horn: Performance Problems for French Horn. Part 1: The French Horn and its Functions in Vocal and Chamber Music before 1800." *Horn Call* 18, no. 2 (April 1988): 63-71.

Symposion, "Mozarts Hornkonzerte" [Symposium, "Mozart's horn concertos"]. *Mozart-Jahrbuch* 1987/88: 115-179.

Contents: Franz Giegling, "Ueberlieferungs- und Editionsprobleme [Transmittal and edition problems]" (115-19); Alan Tyson, "Mozart's Horn Concertos: New Datings and the Identification of Handwriting" (121-37); Hans Pizka, "Das hohe Horn bei Mozart — oder Die Situation des hohen Horns zu Mozarts Zeit [The high horn in Mozart — or, The position of the high horn in Mozart's time]" (139-46); Thomas Müller, "Zur Stopftechnik in Mozarts Hornkonzerten [On stopping technique in Mozart's horn concertos]" (147-51); Gregor Widholm, "Klangliche Besonderheiten der Hörner zur Zeit Mozarts im Verhältnis zu modernen Hörnern [Sound properties of the horns of Mozart's time in relation to modern horns]" (153-79). For an English translation of the article by Müller, see under his name above.

Tarr, Edward. *The Trumpet*. Translated from the German by S.E. Plank and Edward Tarr. Portland, Ore.: Amadeus Press; London: Batsford, 1988. [OCLC 18136776 or 18321408]

Translation of *Die Trompete: Ihre Geschichte von der Antike bis zur Gegenwart* (Bern & Stuttgart: Hallwag, 1977).

Tritle, Thomas. "Horns in the Shrine to Music Museum." *Horn Call* 19, no. 1 (October 1988): 30-35.

Tyson, Alan. See Symposion, "Mozarts Hornkonzerte."

Veldhoven, Jos van and Jolande van der Klis. "Aan het woord: Crispian Steele-Perkins [Speaking: Crispian Steele-Perkins]." *Tijdschrift voor oude muziek* 4, no. 1 (February 1989): 21-22.

Interview.

Voelker, Dale. "The Trombone Music of Daniel Speer." *ITA Journal* 17, no. 4 (Fall 1988): 38-43.

Walser, Robert. "Musical Imagery and Performance Practice in J.S. Bach's Arias with Trumpet." *ITG Journal* 13, no. 1 (September 1988): 62-77.

Webb, John. "The Billingsgate Trumpet." *Galpin Society Journal* 41 (October 1988): 59-62.

Describes a 14th-century trumpet now in the London Museum. See also the article on the same trumpet by Lawson & Egan. Prompted a letter from Rinaldo Pellizzari (42 [August 1989]: 179) concerning a straight trumpet by S. Hainlein dated 1461, doubts about the authenticity of which are expressed in a letter by Maurice Byrne.

Widholm, Gregor. See Symposion, "Mozarts Hornkonzerte."

Winkler, Klaus. See Schlemm, Horst Dietrich.

Winick, Steven. "Trumpet Music by Carl Maria von Weber: A Tusch, a Canon, and a March." *ITG Journal* 12, no. 4 (May 1988): 4-29.

Wolfingbarger, Steve M. *The Nineteenth-Century German Tradition of Solo Trombone Playing: A Lecture Recital, Together with Three Recitals of Selected Works of E. Bozza, W. Hartley, A. Frackenpohl, A. Pryor, G. Frescobaldi, L. Grondahl, P. Bonneau and Others*. D.M.A. thesis, North Texas State University, 1989.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses and dissertations.

Most of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted. If you cannot obtain an article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

The American Organist American Guild of Organists, 475 Riverside Drive, Suite 1260, New York, N.Y. 10115.

Bach Riemenschneider Bach Institute, Baldwin-Wallace College, 49 Seminary Street, Berea, Ohio 44017.

Brass Bulletin Jean-Pierre Mathez, Rédaction, Brass Bulletin, CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland.

Continuo Box 10, Bath, N.Y. 14810.

Diapason, The The Organ Historical Society, Inc., P.O. Box 26811, Richmond, Va. 23261.

Early Brass Journal, The Defunct.

Early Music Journals Subscriptions, Oxford University Press, Pinkhill House, Southfield Road, Eynsham OX8 1JJ, England.

Galpin Society Journal Clifford Bevan, Membership Secretary, The Galpin Society, 10 Clifton Terrace, Winchester SO22 5BJ, England.

Horn Call Ellen Powley, International Horn Society Executive-Secretary, 2220 N. 1400 E., Provo, Utah 84604.

Imago Musicae Duke University Press, Box 6697, College Station, Durham, N.C. 27708.

ITA Journal Vern Kagarice, Editor, ITA Journal, School of Music, North Texas State University, Denton, Texas 76203.

ITG Journal Bryan Goff, Editor, ITG Journal, School of Music, Florida State University, Tallahassee, Fla. 32306-2098.

Journal de musique ancienne 3575, boulevard Saint-Laurent, bureau 422, Montréal, Canada H2X 2T7.

Journal of Musicology, The University of California Journals, 2120 Berkeley Way, Berkeley, Calif. 94720.

Mozart-Jahrbuch Internationale Stiftung Mozarteum, Mirabellplatz 1, A-5020 Salzburg, Austria.

Musica Antiqua Vlaams Centrum voor Oude Muziek, Postbus 45, B-3570 Peer, Belgium.

NACWPI Journal Richard Weerts, Executive Secretary-Treasurer, NACWPI, Division of Fine Arts, Northeast Missouri State University, Kirksville, Mo. 63501.

Orchester, Das B. Schott's Söhne, Carl-Zeiss-Strasse 1, D-6500 Mainz, Germany.

Revista de musicología Sociedad Española de Musicología, Juan Alvarez Mendizábal, 65 dupl. -3º, 28008 Madrid, Spain.

Tibia Hermann Moeck Verlag, D-3100 Celle 1, Postfach 143, Germany.

Tijdschrift voor oude muziek Stichting Organisatie Oude Muziek Utrecht, Postbus 734, NL-3500 AS Utrecht, The Netherlands.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Public Services, Music Library, Indiana University. He recently completed a book on the Anglo-Venetian Bassano family.

A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1989-90

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertory and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers those items for 1990 that had reached me by August 1991 as well as those items from 1988 and 1989 that reached me after May 1990. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or corrections.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in Western European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers. The bibliographic information about theses and dissertations was taken from the database *Dissertation Abstracts International* on Dialog.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Ahrens, Christian. "Dampfsirenen oder Musikinstrumente? Zur Auseinandersetzung um die tiefen Blechblasinstrumente im 19. Jahrhundert" [Steam whistles or musical instruments? Towards the elucidation of low brass instruments in the 19th century]. *Das Orchester* 38, no. 4 (1990): 362-65.

Aubrey, Elizabeth. "References to Music in Old Occitan Literature." *Acta Musicologica* 61, no. 1 (May-August 1989): 110-49.
Includes some references to brass instruments in troubadour songs.

Ballester i Gibert, Jordi. "Retablos marianos tardomedievales con ángeles músicos procedentes del antiguo Reino de Aragón. Catálogo" [Late medieval Marian altarpieces with angel musicians originating from the ancient kingdom of Aragón]. *Revista de musicología* 13, no. 1 (January-June 1990): 123-201.
Includes depictions of players of the *trompeta bastarda*.

- Barton, Peter. "Callcott's Radius French Horn: Some Further Observations." *The Galpin Society Journal* 43 (1990): 153-59.
- "The Battle of Eraclion against Cosroe." *Brass Bulletin* 71 (1990): 4-5.
A reproduction of a fresco by Piero della Francesca (painted 1452-66) that includes a trumpeter.
- Bauguess, Barry. "The Historical Brass Movement." *Brass Ink: The Newsletter of Brass Society, Inc.* 1, no. 2 (December 1990): 1-3.
Includes a basic bibliography.
- Becheri, Roberto. *Il corno di posta: da mezzo di segnalazione a strumento sinfonico. Catalogo della mostra organizzata dall'Istituto di Studi Storici Postali, Prato, Palazzo Pretorio, 18 marzo-2 aprile 1989* [The post horn: from means of signalling to symphonic instrument. Catalog of the exhibition organized by the Istituto di Studi Storici Postali, Prato, Palazzo Pretorio, 18 March-2 April 1989]. *Quaderni di storia postale*, 12. Prato: Istituto di Studi Storici Postali, 1989. [OCLC 22004625]
Includes cassette of post horn signals and music.
- Borowicz, Jon T. "The Mid-Nineteenth-Century Brass Band — A Rebirth." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 123-31.
- Bowles, Edmund A. "A Brief Overview of Musical Ensembles with Brass Instruments in European Festivals of State." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 78-96.
- _____. "Blowing a Trumpet" (letter to the editor). *Early Music* 18, no. 2 (May 1990): 350-51.
In response to the articles by Herbert W. Myers, Keith Polk, and Ross W. Duffin in 17, no. 3 (August 1989): 383-402. Concerns the role played by medieval technology in fabricating slide trumpets.
- Burroughs, Mary Alice. *An Annotated Bibliography of the Works for Horn, Voice and Piano from 1830-1850 with an Analysis of Selected Works from 1830-1986*. A.Mus.D. thesis, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 1990. [OCLC 22423817]
- Burrows, Donald. "Handel, the Dead March and a Newly Identified Trombone Movement." *Early Music* 18, no. 3 (August 1990): 408-16.
- Carter, Stewart. "Trombone Obligatos in Viennese Oratorios of the Baroque." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 52-77.

- Cline, Gilbert D. *The Cornetto: A Guide Toward Performance, Within Historical Context, Indicating the Use of the Recorder as a Companion Instrument*. D.M.A. thesis, University of Oregon, 1990.
- Davis, Joyce Francine. *The Cornet à pistons in French and French-Influenced Orchestrations from 1830 to 1936*. D.M.A. thesis, The Ohio State University, 1990. [OCLC 23662050]
- Descalzo, Andrés. "Músicos en la Corte de Pedro IV el Ceremonioso (1336-1387)" [Musicians at the court of Pedro IV the Ceremonious (1336-1387)]. *Revista de musicología* 13, no. 1 (January-June 1990): 81-122.
Includes capsule biographies of the 51 members of the "Trompetas, trompas y timbaleros."
- Downey, Peter. "Adam Drese's 1648 Funeral Music and the Invention of the Slide Trumpet," in Gerard Gillen & Harry White, ed. *Musicology in Ireland*. Irish Musical Studies, 1. Blackrock, Co. Dublin: Irish Academic Press, 1990, 200-17. [OCLC 21231960 or 23141459]
- _____. "What Samuel Pepys Heard on 3 February 1661: English Trumpet Style Under the Later Stuart Monarchs." *Early Music* 18, no. 3 (August 1990): 417-28. See also the letter from Jeremy Montagu in 19, no. 1 (February 1991): 153-54.
- Dudgeon, Ralph. "Keyed Bugle Method Books: Documents of Transition in 19th-Century Brass Instrument Performance Practice and Aesthetics in England." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 112-22.
- Dullat, Günter. *Metallblasinstrumentenbau: Entwicklungstufen und Technologie* [Metal wind-instrument making: stages of development and technology]. Fachbuchreihe Das Instrument, 48. Frankfurt am Main: Bochinsky, 1989. [OCLC 22181949]
- François-Sappey, Brigitte. "Le personnel de la musique royale de l'avènement de Louis XVI à la chute de la monarchie (1774-1792)" [The personnel of the royal music from the accession of Louis XVI to the fall of the monarchy (1774-1792)]. "*Recherches sur la musique française classique* 26 (1988-1990): 133-72.
- Gardstrom, Dwight A. *A History of the Fourth Regimental Band and Musicians of the Fourth Minnesota Infantry Volunteers During the War of the Great Rebellion, 1861-1865*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Minnesota, 1989. [OCLC 21993349 or 22579214]

- Glixon, Jonathan. "Far una bella procession: Music and Public Ceremony at the Venetian *scuole grandi*," in *Essays on Italian Music in the Cinquecento*, ed. Richard Charteris. Altro Polo. Sydney, Australia: Frederick May Foundation for Italian Studies, University of Sydney, 1990, pp. 190-220. [OCLC 20905232]
- Gross, Ernest H., III. "The Influence of Berlioz on Contemporary Nineteenth Century Use of Brass Instruments. Fourth Installment: Berlioz and Wagner; Conclusion." *Brass Bulletin* 70 (1990): 62-67.
- Habla, Bernhard. *Besetzung und Instrumentation des Blasorchesters seit der Erfindung der Ventile für Blechblasinstrumente bis zum zweiten Weltkrieg in Österreich und Deutschland* [Players and instrumentation of the wind orchestra from the invention of the valve for brass instruments to World War II in Austria and Germany], 2 vols. *Alta Musica: eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 12. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1990. [OCLC 22621745]
Originally a Dr.Phil. dissertation, Karl-Franzens Universität Graz, Austria, 1989.
- Harris, Noreen Elizabeth. "Concerto for Trombone" by Georg Christoph Wagenseil: *An Analysis and Performance Practice Study*. M.M. thesis, California State University, Long Beach, 1990. [OCLC 22602374]
- Herbert, Trevor. "The Sackbut in England in the 17th and 18th Centuries." *Early Music* 18, no. 4 (November 1990): 609-16.
- Hiller, Albert. "Finger-holes in Post Horns: An Explanation." *The Galpin Society Journal* 43 (1990): 161-64.
See also the companion article by David Rycroft, cited below.
- Holmgren, Fred. "Stalking the Valveless Trumpet." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 2 (Summer 1990): 5-8.
An annotated listing of modern makers of such trumpets.
- Huber, Renate. *Verzeichnis sämtlicher Musikinstrumente im Germanischen Nationalmuseum Nürnberg* [Catalog of the complete musical instruments in the German National Museum, Nuremberg]. Taschenbücher zur Musikwissenschaft, 109. Wilhelmshaven: Florian Noetzel Verlag/Heinrichshofen-Bücher, 1989. [OCLC 21559593]
Pp. 301-60 on brass instruments. Brief descriptions; no pictures.

- Jambou, Louis. "Documentos relativos a los músicos de la segunda mitad del siglo XVII de la Capillas Reales y Villa y Corte de Madrid, sacados de su Archivo de Protocolos" [Documents relating to the musicians of the second half of the 17th century of the royal chapels and town and court of Madrid, taken from its Archivo de Protocolos]. *Revista de musicología* 12, no. 2 (July-October 1989): 469-514.
- Kampmann, Bruno. "Les systèmes de pistons des instruments de musique à vent" [The valve systems of musical wind instruments]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 3 (October 1988): 14-18; 4 (January 1989): 14-19; 5 (May 1989): 13-14; 6 (November 1989): 15-17; 7 (March 1990): 14-21; 8 (September 1990): 25-27.
- Keller, Jindřich. "Antique Trumpet Mutes." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 97-103.
Translation of an article in Czech that appeared in *Casopsis Národního Muzea Historické Muzeum* 40, no. 1 (1971). See also the article on trumpet mutes by Don L. Smithers, cited below.
- Kenyon de Pascual, Beryl. "Museo de la Música in Barcelona." *Brass Bulletin* 70 (1990): 78-84.
Discusses the brass instruments in that museum.
- Korrick, Leslie. "Instrumental Music in the Early 16th-Century Mass: New Evidence." *Early Music* 18, no. 3 (August 1990): 359-70.
- Kreitner, Kenneth Richard. *Music and Civic Ceremony in Late Fifteenth-Century Barcelona*. Ph.D. dissertation, Duke University, 1990. [OCLC 21497642]
- Lemaître, Edmond. "L'Orchestre dans le théâtre lyrique français chez les continuateurs de Lully 1687-1715" [The orchestra of the French opera under the successors of Lully, 1687-1715]. *Recherches sur la musique française classique* 26 (1988-1990): 83-131.
Includes comments on the trumpet and horn (pp. 102-05).
- Lewis, Michael E. *Solo Trombone Performances at the Gewandhaus in the Nineteenth Century: A Lecture Recital, Together with Three Recitals of Selected Works of G. Jacobs, S. Sulek, E. Bloch, C. Wagenseil, W. Ross, G. Pergolesi, T. George, F. Hidas, J. Albrechtsberger and Others*. D.M.A. thesis, North Texas State University, 1990. [OCLC 23102587]
- Lindell, Robert. "The Wedding of Archduke Charles and Maria of Bavaria in 1571."

Early Music 18, no. 2 (May 1990): 253-69.

Littger, Klaus Walter. *Musik in Eichstätt: Beiträge zur Geschichte der Hofmusik und Katalog* [Music in Eichstätt: contributions to the history of the court music; catalog]. Schriften der Universitätsbibliothek Eichstätt, 12. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1988. [OCLC 21159302]

Includes biographical information on the court musicians, among them 1 cornett player, 7 horn players, and no fewer than 57 trumpeters.

Lomas, Michael John. *Amateur Brass and Wind Bands in Southern England Between the Late Eighteenth Century and circa 1900*, 2 vols. Ph.D. thesis, Open University (Great Britain), 1990.

Lowrey, Alvin. *Lowrey's International Trumpet Discography*, 2 vols. Columbia, S.C.: Camden House, 1990. [OCLC 20419549]

Matthyssens, Xavier. "Godard à bout des autres souffles" [Godard out of other breaths (a pun on "à bout de souffle," or "breathless")]. *Jazz Magazine* no. 391 (March 1990): 22-23.

Interview with Michel Godard about his jazz (?) serpent album "Le chant du serpent."

McCann, John Lawrence. *A History of Trumpet and Cornet Pedagogy in the United States, 1840-1942*. D.M. thesis, Northwestern University, 1989. [OCLC 22944852 or 23718958]

Merryweather, James. *"York Music": The Story of a City's Music from 1304 to 1896*. York: Sessions Book Trust, The Ebor Press [Huntington Road, York YO3 9HS, England], 1988. [OCLC 19268885]
About the York Waits.

Müller-Dombois, Richard. "Der Beitrag Frankreichs zur europäischen Bläserkultur: Musiker, Instrumentenbauer und Komponisten" [The contribution of France to European wind instrument life: musicians, instrument makers, and composers]. *Das Orchester* 38, no. 11 (November 1990): 1148-52.

"Nouvelle invention: Les sudrophones ou saxophones à pistons et à embouchure" [New invention: sudrophones, or saxophones with valves and embouchure]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 8 (September 1990): 4-5.

Facsimile of an advertisement by F. Sudre & Cie that appeared in 1905.

- Orval, Francis. "New Symbols for Hand Positions in the Bell for Natural Horn." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 187-89.
- Palmer, Philip R. "In Defense of the Serpent." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 132-86.
- Pöschl, Josef. *Das österreichische Jagdhornbläserbuch* [The Austrian hunting horn book]. Graz, Austria: H. Weishaupt, 1990.
- Polk, Keith. "The Schubingers of Augsburg: Innovation in Renaissance Instrumental Music," in *Quaestiones in musica: Festschrift für Franz Krautwurst zum 65. Geburtstag*, ed. Friedhelm Brusniak & Horst Leuchtmann. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1989, pp. 495-503. [OCLC 21961902]
Concerns a family of musicians who, breaking with tradition, played both loud and soft instruments.
- _____. "Voices and Instruments: Soloists and Ensembles in the 15th Century." *Early Music* 18, no. 2 (May 1990): 179-98.
Includes more on the Schubingers, as well as other cornetto and sackbut players.
- Poulin, Pamela. "A View of Eighteenth-Century Musical Life and Training: Anton Stadler's 'Musick Plan.'" *Music & Letters* 71, no. 2 (May 1990): 215-24.
Concerns Stadler's recommendations for the curriculum for a music school in Hungary in 1800. Includes suggestions for the size and constitution of a chamber ensemble and a wind *Harmonie* or *Tafelmusik*.
- Raum, J. Richard. "The Alto Trombone in the 18th Century Sacred Chamber Music from the Abbeys of Göttweig and Melk, Austria. Part 1." *Brass Bulletin* 72 (1990): 36-41.
- Rycroft, David. "Post Horns with Finger-holes: Some Queries." *The Galpin Society Journal* 43 (1990): 159-61.
See also the companion article by Albert Hiller, cited above.
- Shaw, David J. "A Five-Piece Wind Band in 1518." *The Galpin Society Journal* 43 (1990): 60-67.
- Smiga, Michel. "Quelques mots sur le lur..." [A few words on the lur]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 9 (December 1990): 24.
- Smith, David Hogan. *Trombone Technique in the Renaissance*. San Francisco (1720 19th Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94122): The King's Trumpetts and Shalmes, 1989.

Smithers, Don L. "Antique Trumpet Mutes: A Retrospective Commentary." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 104-11.

See also the article by Jindřich Keller, cited above.

_____. "Bach, Reiche and the Leipzig *Collegia Musica*." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 2 (1990): 1-51.

_____. "Die Verwendung der Blechblasinstrumente bei J.S. Bach unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Tromba da tirarsi, Kritische Anmerkungen zum gleichnamigen Aufsatz von Thomas G. MacCracken" [The use of brass instruments by J.S. Bach with special consideration of the tromba da tirarsi: critical comments on the article of the same name by Thomas G. MacCracken]. *Bach-Jahrbuch* 76 (1990): 37-51. A reply to MacCracken's article in 70 (1984): 59-89.

South, James. *References to Trumpet Music in the Battle Chansons of Clement Janequin*. D.M.A. thesis, North Texas State University, 1990. [OCLC 22587976 or 23102663]

Sudre, F., & Cie. See "Nouvelle invention," above.

Suppan, Wolfgang. *Das Neue Lexikon des Blasmusikwesens: Biographisches Lexikon* [The new lexicon of wind music matters: biographical lexicon]. 3. Auflage des Lexikons des Blasmusikwesens. Freiburg-Tiengen: Blasmusikverlag Schulz, 1988. [OCLC 20966121]

Tarr, Edward H. "Neruda's Concerto for Horn (or Trumpet)." *Brass Bulletin* 70 (1990): 36-45.

Includes a facsimile of the horn part of the concerto. (Tarr's edition of the concerto will be published by Éditions Bim.) See also the letter to the editor by Max Sommerhalder with a reply by Tarr and a comment by the editor in 71 (1990): 86-87.

_____. "Trompeterzeugnisse aus dem 18. Jahrhundert im Trompetenmuseum Bad Säckingen" [18th-century trumpet items in the Bad Säckingen trumpet museum]. *Das Orchester* 37, no. 11 (1989): 1084-87.

Tomes, Frank. "Flat Trumpet Experiments." *The Galpin Society Journal* 43 (1990): 164-65.

Tracy, Bruce Alan. *The Contrabass Trombone: Its Development and Use*. A.Mus.D. thesis, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 1990. [OCLC 24031518]

Tremmel, Erich. "Trompeterensembles in Bayern im frühen 19. Jahrhundert:

Musizierpraxis, Formen und Besetzungen" [Trumpet ensembles in Bavaria in the early 19th century: practical music making, forms, and players], in *Quaestiones in musica: Festschrift für Franz Krautwurst zum 65. Geburtstag*, ed. Friedhelm Brusniak & Horst Leuchtman, Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1989, pp. 663-75. [OCLC 21961902]

Trojan, Jan. "Christmas Brass Playing in Bohemia and Moravia." *Brass Bulletin* 72 (1990): 7-11.

Tyson, Alan. "Mozart's D-major Horn Concerto: Questions of Date and of Authenticity," in *Studies in Musical Sources and Style: Essays in Honor of Jan LaRue*, ed. Eugene K. Wolf & Edward H. Roesner. Madison, Wisconsin: A-R Editions, 1990, pp. 425-40. [OCLC 22489044]

Weaver, James C. "The Trumpet Museum." *Antiques & Collecting Hobbies* 94, no. 1 (January 1990): 30-33, 60.

A popular article about The Trumpet Museum near Pottstown, Pennsylvania.

Webb, John. *Trombomania*. Bulle, Switzerland: Éditions Bim, 1989.

Early and modern brass humor.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Most of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

Acta Musicologica Bärenreiter-Verlag, Heinrich-Schütz-Allee 35, D-3500 Kassel-Wilhelmshöhe, Germany.

Antiques & Collecting Hobbies Lightner Publishing Corporation, 1006 S. Michigan Avenue, Chicago, IL 60605.

Brass Bulletin Jean-Pierre Mathez, Rédaction, Brass Bulletin, CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland.

Brass Ink: The Newsletter of Brass Society, Inc. Brass Society, Inc., P.O. Box 10019, Winston-Salem, NC 27108-0019.

Early Music Journals Subscriptions Department, Oxford University Press, Pinkhill House, Southfield Road, Eynsham OX8 1JJ, England.

The Galpin Society Journal Pauline Holden, Secretary, The Galpin Society, 38 Eastfield Road, Western Park, Leicester, LE3 6FE, England.

Jazz Magazine R & M Communications, 3 Boulevard de Clichy, 75009 Paris, France.

Larigot: Bulletin de l' Association des Collectionneurs d' Instruments à Vent 93, rue de la Chapelle, Apt 166F, 75018 Paris, France.

Music & Letters Journals Subscriptions Department, Oxford University Press, Pinkhill House, Southfield Road, Eynsham OX8 1JJ, England.

Das Orchester B. Schott's Söhne, Carl-Zeiss-Strasse 1, D-6500 Mainz, Germany.

Revista de musicología Sociedad Española de Musicología, Juan Alvarez Mendizábal, 65 dupl. -3°, 28008 Madrid, Spain.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Public Services, Music Library, Indiana University. He is finishing a guide to writings about the recorder (with Richard Griscom).

A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1990-91

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertory and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers those items for 1991 that had reached me by May 1992 as well as those items from 1990 that reached me after August 1991 (and a few leftovers from 1988-89). I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or corrections.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in Western European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers. The bibliographic information about theses and dissertations was taken from the database *Dissertation Abstracts International* on Dialog.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

150 Jahre Václav František Červený & Synové: ein Blasinstrumenten-Hersteller in internationalem Format [150 years of V.F. Červený & Sons: a wind-instrument manufacturer of international importance]. Prague: V.F. Červený, 1991.

Includes Gunther Joppig, "Václav František Červený, Erfinder und Hersteller von europäischem Rang" (pp. 5-7) and Václav Korbel, "Das neunzehnte Jahrhundert in Böhmen..." (pp. 57-59).

Albertson, Helen. *Ahlberg & Ohlsson: en Fabrik för Bleckblåsinstrument i Stockholm 1850-1959* [Ahlberg & Ohlsson: a manufacturer of brass instruments in Stockholm, 1850-1959]. Musikmuseets Skrifter, 17. Stockholm: Musikmuseet, 1990. [OCLC 23380368]

Her doctoral dissertation (Uppsala Universitet, 1990).

Ashbee, Andrew, ed. *Records of English Court Music. Vol. IV: 1603-1625*. Snodland, Kent: The Editor, 1991. (Available from Scholar Press, Old Post Road, Brookfield, VT 05036.) *Vol. V: 1625-1714*. Aldershot, Hampshire & Brookfield, Vermont: Scholar Press, 1991. [OCLC 16090406]

The previous volumes were: I (1660-1685), published 1986; II (1685-1714), published 1987; and III (1625-1649), published 1988. Two further volumes and a biographical dictionary of English Court musicians are planned. Beginning with the publication of Vol. V, the series is being published by Scholar Press/Gower.

Baines, Anthony. *Gli ottoni* [The brass]. Trans. & ed. Renato Meucci. Torino: EDT, 1991.

A newly revised Italian translation of *Brass Instruments: Their History and Development* (London: Faber & Faber, 1976; rev. & corr. ed., 1978).

Beck, Hartmut. "Entstehung und Ausbreitung der Herrenhuter Brüdergemeinde vom 15.-18. Jahrhundert nach dem gegenwärtigen Stand der Forschung mit Bezug auf die kirchliche Blasmusik [The origin and dissemination of the Moravian Brethren from the 15th to the 18th century from the contemporary position of research on church wind music]," in *Musikgeographie* (see below).

Bevan, Clifford. "The Saxtuba and Organological Vituperation." *The Galpin Society Journal* 43 (March 1990): 135-46.

_____, ed. *Musical Instrument Collections in the British Isles*. Winchester, Hampshire: Piccolo Press, 1990. [OCLC 24710070]

A directory. Mentions brass instruments in no fewer than 56 collections. Some photographs of brass.

Boer, Bertil H. van, Jr. "Some Observations on Bach's Use of the Horn." *The Horn Call Annual* 1 (1989): 59-83. "Corrigenda" in 2 (1990): 91-96. See also the letter from Harold Meek in 3 (1991): 49.

A revised version of the article that appeared in *Bach: Quarterly Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute* 11 (April 1980): 21-28; 12 (July 1980): 9-19. See also the reply by Thomas G. MacCracken (cited below).

Brixel, Eugen. "Mozart and Brass Musicians: W.A. Mozart in his Personal Relations with Trumpet Players, Hornists and Trombonists." *Brass Bulletin* 73 (1991): 18-24; 74 (1991): 44-47.

Bruenger, David. *The Cadenza: Performance Practice in Alto Trombone Concerti of the Eighteenth Century*. D.M.A. thesis, University of North Texas, 1991. [OCLC 25329275]

Büttner, Manfred. "Bethlehem (USA) und der älteste noch heute existierende 'richtige' Posaunenchor [Bethlehem (U.S.A.) and the oldest extant 'genuine' trombone choir]," in *Musikgeographie* (see below).

_____. "Die Trompete im Altertum und Mittelalter [The trumpet in antiquity and the Middle Ages]," in *Musikgeographie* (see below).

_____. "Zum Einfluss der geographischen Lage auf die kultische Musik, insbesondere das 'Posaunenblasen' [On the influence of geographical locality on festive music, especially trombone playing]," in *Musikgeographie* (see below).

Čížek, Bohuslav. "Josef Kail (1795-1871), Forgotten Brass Instrument Innovator." *Brass Bulletin* 73 (1991): 64-75; 74 (1991): 24-29.

Collins, Timothy A. "Gottfried Reiche: A More Complete Biography." *ITG Journal* 15, no. 3 (February 1991): 5-22.

A revised version of the author's article of the same name that appeared in *Bach* 19, no. 3 (Fall 1988): 4-18.

Conforzi, Igino. "Girolamo Fantini 'monarcha della tromba': nuove acquisizioni biografiche [Girolamo Fantini, 'king of the trumpet': new biographical findings]." *Recercare* 2 (1990): 225-41.

Includes two-page summary in English.

Culbertson, Robert Merrill, Jr. *The Kopprasch Etudes for Horn*. D.M.A. thesis, The University of Texas at Austin, 1990. [OCLC 23824566]

A study of the two sets of horn etudes by Georg Kopprasch (first published ca. 1832).

Damm, Peter. "Zum Thema: das Horn bei J.S. Bach [On the theme of the horn in J.S. Bach]," in *Johann Sebastian Bachs historischer Ort*, herausgegeben im Auftrag des Forschungskollektivs "Johann Sebastian Bach" an der Universität Leipzig von Reinhard Szeskus. *Bach-Studien*, 10. Wiesbaden & Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1991, pp. 233-42. [OCLC 24243803]

Dauverné, François Georges Auguste. "Method for Trumpet." Trans. Gaetan Chenier, Ruby Miller Orval, Rebecca Pike, and Jeffrey Snedeker. *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 179-261.

Dickey, Bruce. "*L'accento*: In Search of a Forgotten Ornament." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 98-121.

- E., F. "Die Klappentrompete — ein zu Unrecht vegessenes Instrument der Wiener Klassik [The keyed trumpet — an unjustly neglected instrument of the Classical period]." *Instrumentenbau Zeitschrift* 44, no. 9 (September 1990): 27.
- Fiedler, Andre. "The Equale." *ITA Journal* 19, no. 1 (Winter 1991): 40-41.
- Forst, Inge. "Eine unbekannte Jagdmusik aus dem 18. Jahrhundert: Die *Missa Sancti Huberti* (1756) des Bonner Hofmusikers Johann Ries (1723-1784) [An unknown piece of hunting music from the 18th century: the *Missa Sancti Huberti* (1756) of the Bonn court musician Johann Ries (1723-1784)]." *Kirchenmusikalisches Jahrbuch* 73 (1989): 35-40.
Concerns a mass that contains prominent trumpet and horn parts.
- Gambassi, Osvaldo. *Il Concerto Palatino della Signoria di Bologna: cinque secoli di vita musicale a corte (1250-1797)* [The Concerto Palatino of the signory of Bologna: five centuries of musical life at the court (1250-1797)]. "Historiae musicae cultores" biblioteca, 55. Florence: Leo S. Olschki, 1989. [OCLC 22118439]
- Getz, Suzanne Christine. *Music and Patronage in Milan, 1535-1550, and Vincenzo Ruffo's First Motet Book*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of North Texas, 1991. [OCLC 25568952]
Includes information on musicians at the court.
- Gosch, Werner. "Aufführungspraktische Probleme durch verschiedene Besetzungsmöglichkeiten des Quatriciniums in Johann Ernst Altenburgs 'Versuch einer Anleitung zur heroisch-musikalischen Trompeter- und Paukerkunst' [Performance practice problems through various scoring possibilities of the quadricinium in Johann Ernst Altenburg's *Versuch*]," in *Johann Sebastian Bachs historischer Ort*, herausgegeben im Auftrag des Forschungskollektivs "Johann Sebastian Bach" an der Universität Leipzig von Reinhard Szeskus. *Bach-Studien*, 10. Wiesbaden & Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1991, pp. 243-49. [OCLC 24243803]
- Griffith, David. "*A Musical Place of the First Quality*": *A History of Institutional Music-Making in York, c. 1550-1989*. Ph.D. thesis, University of York, 1990.
Includes sections on the York Waits, brass bands, and military bands.
- Gross, Ernest H., III. *The Natural Trumpet of the Moravians in Colonial America*. D.M. document, Indiana University, 1991.
- _____. "The Trumpet and the *Unitas Fratrum*." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 4-22.

An excerpt from his D.M. document.

Güttler, Ludwig. "Das Corno da caccia bei Johann Sebastian Bach, unter besonderer Berücksichtigung seines Einsatzes in der 'Quoniam'-Arie der h-Moll-Messe [The corno da caccia in Johann Sebastian Bach, with special consideration of its use in the 'Quoniam' aria of the B minor Mass]," in *Johann Sebastian Bachs historischer Ort*, herausgegeben im Auftrag des Forschungskollektivs "Johann Sebastian Bach" an der Universität Leipzig von Reinhard Szeskus. Bach-Studien, 10. Wiesbaden & Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1991, pp. 216-32. [OCLC 24243803]

Hachenberg, Karl. "Der Werkstoff Messing im mitteleuropäischen Instrumentenbau vom 16. bis Ende des 18. Jahrhunderts [The raw material brass in middle European instrument making from the 16th to the end of the 18th century]." *Instrumentenbau Zeitschrift* 44, no. 9 (September 1990): 17-24.

Hajdinjak, Reinhard, & Bernhard Habla. *Solo-Trompete und Blasorchester: Verzeichnis von über 500 Solowerken für Trompete(n) und Blasorchester* [Solo trumpet and wind orchestra: catalog of over 500 solo works for trumpet(s) and wind orchestra]. Werke für Soloinstrumente und Blasorchester, 1. Vienna: Kliment, 1991.

Hazen, Margaret Hindle. *Register of the Hazen Collection of Band Photographs and Ephemera, ca. 1818-1931*. Washington, D.C.: Archives Center, National Museum of American History, Smithsonian Institution, 1990. [OCLC 22119577]
Available free of charge.

Heide, Geert Jan van der. "Brass Instrument Metalworking Techniques: The Bronze Age to the Industrial Revolution." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 122-50.

Heim, David Bruce. *Practical Tuning, Temperament, and Conditioning for Hornists and Other Wind Instrumentalists: Understanding and Attaining Intonational Flexibility in Musical Performance*. M.M. thesis, The University of Tulsa, 1990.

Herbert, Trevor, ed. *Bands: The Brass Band Movement in the 19th and 20th Centuries*. Open University Press [c/o Taylor & Francis Group, 1900 Frost Road, Suite 101, Bristol, PA 19007-1598], 1991. [OCLC 22419912]

Heyde, Herbert. "Brass Instrument Making in Berlin from the 17th to the 20th Century: A Survey." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 43-47.

_____. *Historische Musikinstrumente der Staatlichen Reka-Sammlung am Bezirksmuseum Viadrina Frankfurt (Oder): Katalog* [Historical musical instru-

ments of the Reka national collection at the Viadrina district museum, Frankfurt an der Oder: catalog]. Leipzig: VEB Deutscher Verlag für Musik; Wiesbaden: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1989. [OCLC 21721011 or 22469397]

_____. "Instrumentenkundliches über Horn und Trompete bei Johann Sebastian Bach [Instrument properties of the horn and trumpet in Johann Sebastian Bach]," in *Johann Sebastian Bachs historischer Ort*, herausgegeben im Auftrag des Forschungskollektivs "Johann Sebastian Bach" an der Universität Leipzig von Reinhard Szeskus. Bach-Studien, 10. Wiesbaden & Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1991, pp. 250-65. [OCLC 24243803]

_____. "Restaurierung eines seltenen Signalhorns [The restoration of a rare signal horn]." *Brass Bulletin* 74 (1991): 76-78.
Concerns a French instrument of the 1830s.

Hiller, Albert. *Trompetenmusiken aus drei Jahrhunderten (ca. 1600 bis nach 1900): Kompositionen für 1 bis 24 (Natur-) Trompeten mit und ohne Pauken*. Band 1: 17. Jahrhundert, die Anfänge [Trumpet musics from three centuries (ca. 1600 - after 1900): compositions for 1-24 (natural) trumpets with and without timpani]. Vol. 1: 17th century, the beginnings]. Kölner Musikbeiträge, 1. Cologne: Wolfgang G. Haas-Musikverlag, 1991. [OCLC 25104282]

_____. "Unknown Trumpet Works Which Deserve Attention: Anon. (Early Classical) Concerto in D Major for Trumpet, Strings, B.C., The 'Washington Trumpet Concerto.'" *Brass Bulletin* 73 (1991): 122-23.
Briefly describes a manuscript concerto in the possession of the Library of Congress (MUSIC 3262 ITEM 1).

Historic Musical Instruments in the Edinburgh University Collection: Catalogue of the Edinburgh University Collection of Historic Musical Instruments. I: The Illustrations, ed. Arnold Myers. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Collection of Historic Musical Instruments, 1990. [OCLC 23467302]

Holman, Peter. "English Trumpets — A Response." *Early Music* 19, no. 3 (August 1991): 443.

A reply to Peter Downey's article "What Samuel Pepys Heard on 3 February 1661: English Trumpet Style under the later Stuart Monarchs," 18, no. 3 (August 1990): 417-28.

Howey, Henry. "The Lives of *Hoftrumpeter* and *Stadpfeiffer* as Portrayed in Three Novels of Daniel Speer." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 65-78.

Jeurissen, Herman. "Mozart's allererstes Hornkonzert: Fragen und Hypothesen." *Das Orchester* 39, no. 10 (1991): 1104-07. English translation, "Mozart's Very First Horn Concerto." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 48-55.

Based on a lecture given at the 1991 Salzburg Mozart Congress. Proposes that the Allegro KV 370b and the Rondo KV 371 belong to a lost horn concerto of Mozart's.

_____. "Willem Spandau, hoornvirtuoos aan het hof van Willem V [Willem Spandau, horn virtuoso at the court of Willem V]." *Mens en melodie* 46, no. 4 (April 1991): 218-21.

Jooste, Fanie. "The Primary Influences on South African Wind Music of the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries." *Journal of Band Research* 26, no. 2 (Spring 1991): 54-65.

Includes a list of 24 trumpeters of the Cape of Good Hope garrison.

Joppig, Gunther. See *150 Jahre Václav František Červený & Synové*, above.

Kampmann, Bruno. "Catalogue de la collection d'instruments de musique à vent [Catalog of the collection of wind instruments]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* numéro spécial no. 1 (September 1991).

Kearns, Andrew. "Clarino Horn, Hand Horn, and Virtuosity in the Late-Eighteenth Century Horn Concerto." *The Horn Call Annual* 3 (1991): 2-30.

Kreitner, Kenneth. *Discoursing Sweet Music: Town Bands and Community Life in Turn-of-the-Century Pennsylvania*. Music in American Life. Urbana: University of Illinois Press, 1990.

Korbel, Václav. See *150 Jahre Václav František Červený & Synové*, above.

Kornder, W. "Posaunenchoré als Identitätsträger [Trombone choirs as carriers of identity]," in *Musikgeographie* (see below).

Kos, Koraljka. "Osten und Westen in der Feld- und Militärmusik an der türkischen Grenze [East and West in the field and military music on the Turkish frontiers]." *Imago musicae* 5 (1988): 109-27.

Krumpfer, Hans-Joachim. "1796-1908: The Long Sleep of the Haydn Trumpet Concerto. . ." *Brass Bulletin* 75 (1991): 36-39.

Landers, Harvey J., Jr. *The Horn in Selected Symphonies of Anton Bruckner*. Ph.D. dissertation, Texas Tech University, 1990. [OCLC 25677933]

Lapie, Raymond. "The Trombone and Chamber Music in France, 1800-1910." *Brass Bulletin* 76 (1991): 74-81.

_____. "Sigismund Neukomm (1778-1858) and the Trombone." *Brass Bulletin* 75 (1991): 30-34.

Lawson, Graeme. "Medieval Trumpet from the City of London, II." *The Galpin Society Journal* 44 (March 1991): 150-56.

The first part, by Graeme Lawson and Geoff Egan, appeared in 41 (October 1988): 63-66.

Lemaître, Edmond. "Les sources des *Plaisirs de l'Isle enchantée* [The sources of *Plaisirs*]." *Revue de musicologie* 77, no. 2 (1991): 187-200.

Includes a list of the musicians who performed in the *Plaisirs*, an extravaganza given at the court of Louis XIV in 1664.

Lewis, H.M. "How the Cornet Became a Trumpet — The Instruments and Music of a Transitional Period in American Music: 1880-1925." *ITG Journal* 16, no. 1 (September 1991): 17-23, 26.

Lijnschooten, Henk van. *Woordenboek voor de blasmuziek: Dictionary of windmusic*. Wormerveer, Holland: Molenaar's Muziekcentrale, 1989. [OCLC 24289067]
In Dutch, English, French, and German.

Lionnet, Jean. "Une 'mode française' à Rome au XVIIe siècle [A 'French manner' in Rome in the 17th century]." *Revue de musicologie* 77, no. 2 (1991): 279-90.

Includes information on the use of trumpets in Roman church music.

MacCracken, Thomas G. "Further Observations on Bach's Use of the Horn: A Reply to Bertil H. van Boer, Jr." *The Horn Call Annual* 2 (1990): 97-104. See also the reply by Boer, pp. 105-113.

Mandate Against the Unauthorized Playing of Trumpets and Beating of Military Kettledrums Dated the 23rd of July in the year 1711. English Translation and Commentary by Edward H. Tarr. Supplement to *ITG Journal* 16, no. 1 (September 1991). Includes a facsimile of the Saxon *Mandat wieder das unbefugte Trompeten-Blasen und Heer-Paucken-Schlagen de dato den 23. Julii Anno 1711*. [OCLC 24519845]

Mangsen, Sandra. "Ad Libitum Procedures in Instrumental Duos and Trios." *Early Music* 19, no. 1 (February 1991): 29-40.

Concerns those published in Italy (primarily Venice and Bologna) between 1600 and 1675.

Martínez, José de Juan. *Método de clarín*. Reprint of 1830 edition, ed. Beryl Kenyon de Pascual. Madrid: Alpuerto, for Real Conservatorio de Música de Madrid, 1990. Text in Spanish with editorial summary in English.

McCann, John. "A Cornett Odyssey." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 33-42. Discusses a dozen cornetts from the same workshop or circle, probably in seventeenth-century Germany.

McCullough, David M. "The Horn Quartet: An Historical Perspective on the Evolution of the Genre and a Survey of Works Composed Since 1950." *The Horn Call Annual* 3 (1991): 31-48.

Derived from his D.M.A. thesis, *Performance and Stylistic Aspects of Horn Quartets by Hindemith, Tippett, Bozza, Heiden, and Reynolds* (University of Georgia, 1990) [OCLC 22976714].

Meucci, Renato. "Il cimbasso e gli strumenti affini nell'ottocento italiano [The cimbasso and related instruments in 19th-century Italy]." *Studi verdiani* 5 (1988-1989): 109-62.

Concerns the cimbasso or corno basso, oficleide a chiavi e a macchina, bombardone e pelittone, trombone contrabbasso "Verdi," and basso tuba.

Meyer, Christian. "Un inventaire des livres et des instruments de musique de la chapelle des Comtes de Montbélaird (1555) [An inventory of the music books and musical instruments of the chapel of the counts of Montbélaird (1555)]." *Fontes artis musicae* 38, no. 2 (April-June 1991): 122-29.

Includes eight cornetts.

Montagu, Jeremy. *The French Horn*. Princes Risborough, Buckinghamshire: Shire Publications, 1990. [OCLC 21560466]

Musikgeographie: weltliche und geistliche Bläsermusik in ihren Beziehungen zueinander und zu ihrer Umwelt: Tagungsband des Symposiums 1990 [Music geography: secular and sacred wind music in their relationships to one another and to their milieu: proceedings of the 1990 symposium], ed. Manfred Büttner, Wolfgang Schnabel, and Klaus Winkler. *Abhandlungen zur Geschichte der Geowissenschaften und Religion / Umwelt-Forschung*, 6. Bochum: Universitätsverlag Dr. N. Brockmeyer, 1991- [OCLC 24411265]

Includes articles by Hartmut Beck, Manfred Büttner, W. Kornder, Wolfgang Schnabel, and Klaus Winkler (q.v.).

- Myers, Arnold, & Angela Cartledge. *Catalogue of the Brass Musical Instruments in the Collections of Bradford Art Galleries and Museums*. Keighley, West Yorkshire: Cliffe Castle Museum (Spring Gardens Lane), 1991.
- Myers, Arnold, & Trevor Herbert. *Catalogue of the European Wind and Percussion Instruments in the Cyfarthfa Castle Museum Collection*. Cyfarthfa Park, Merthyr Tydfil (Mid-Glamorgan CF47 8RE, Wales): Cyfarthfa Castle Museum and Art Gallery, 1990. [OCLC 24709951]
- Nuchelmans, Jan. "Nooit eens lekker in je eentje spelen. Aan het woord: Charles Toet [Never having the pleasure of playing all by yourself: Charles Toet in conversation]." *Tijdschrift voor oude muziek* 6, no. 1 (February 1991): 8-10.
Interview with Charles Toet, sackbut player with the group Concerto Palatino.
- Nussbaum, Jeffrey. "Jean Rife: An Interview." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 3 (1991): 5-8.
- Oorschot, Guido van. "Aha, er is nog niemand die dit kan. Aan het woord: Bruce Dickey [Aha! There's no one who can do this yet: Bruce Dickey in conversation]." *Tijdschrift voor oude muziek* 6, no. 2 (May 1991): 15-17.
- Pinnock, Andrew, and Bruce Wood. "Counterblast on English Trumpets." *Early Music* 19, no. 3 (August 1991): 437-43.
Another reply to Peter Downey's article "What Samuel Pepys Heard on 3 February 1661: English Trumpet Style under the later Stuart Monarchs," 18, no. 3 (August 1990): 417-28.
- Polk, Keith. "Patronage and Innovation in Instrumental Music in the 15th Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 151-78.
- Pyle, Robert W., Jr. "A Computational Model of the Baroque Trumpet and Mute." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 79-97.
- Raum, J. Richard. "The Alto Trombone in the 18th Century Sacred Chamber Music from the Abbeys of Göttweig and Melk, Austria. II, III." *Brass Bulletin* 73 (1991): 38-43; 74 (1991): 58-65.
Part I appeared in 72 (1990): 36-41.
- Rehrig, William H. *The Heritage Encyclopedia of Band Music: Composers and their Music*, 2 vols. Ed. Paul E. Bierley. Westerville, Ohio: Integrity Press, 1991. [OCLC 24606813]

Rocchetti, Gabriele. "Benedetto Bergonzi cornista, compositore e inventore cremonese (1790-1839) [Benedetto Bergonzi: hornplayer, composer and inventor from Cremona]." *Recercare* 2 (1990): 151-71.

Includes two-page summary in English.

Rycroft, David. "Wind Bands of Henry VII and VIII." *The Galpin Society Journal* 44 (March 1991): 159.

A follow-up to David J. Shaw's article "A Five-Piece Wind Band in 1518," in 43 (March 1990): 60-67.

Saunders, Steven. "The Hapsburg Court of Ferdinand II and the *Messa, Magnificat et Iubilate Deo a sette chori concertati con le trombe* (1621) of Giovanni Valentini." *Journal of the American Musicological Society* 45, no. 3 (Fall 1991): 359-403.

Valentini's pieces for seven choirs and trumpets "are cast on more expansive a scale than any music yet to appear in print, and feature what their composer claimed was 'a new way of combining trumpets with voices and instruments.'"

Schnabel, Wolfgang. "Adolf Müller, sein Leben, seine Umwelt und sein Werk [Adolf Müller: his life, times, and work]," in *Musikgeographie* (see above).

_____. "Johannes Kuhlo," in *Musikgeographie* (see above).

Selfridge-Field, Eleanor. "Instrumentation and Genre in Italian Music, 1600-1670." *Early Music* 19, no. 1 (February 1991): 61-67.

Seraphinoff, Richard. "European and American Natural Horn Makers." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 3 (1991): 11-17.

Sluchin, B., & R. Lapie. "Solo Trombone Passages in 19th-Century French Orchestra Music." *ITA Journal* 19, no. 1 (Winter 1991): 26-29.

Sluchin, Benny, and René Caussé. *Sourdines des cuivres* [Brass mutes]. Recherche, musique et danse, 2. Paris: Ed. de la Maison des sciences de l'homme, 1991.

Smith, Nicholas E. "History of the Horn Mute." *The Horn Call Annual* 2 (1990): 77-90. See also the letter by Barry Tuckwell in 3 (1991): 49-50.

A revision of part of his D.M.A. dissertation, Eastman School of Music, 1980.

Sommerhalder, Max. Letter to the editor. *Brass Bulletin* 71 (1990): 85-87; with responses by Edward H. Tarr and the editor.

In reply to Tarr's article "Neruda's Concerto for Horn (or Trumpet)," 70 (1990): 36-45.

- Spitzer, John. "The Birth of the Orchestra in Rome — An Iconographic Study." *Early Music* 19, no. 1 (February 1991): 9-27.
- Suppan, Wolfgang. "Die Harmoniemusik: Das private Repräsentations- und Vergnügungsensemble des mitteleuropäischen Adels — zwischen Kunst- und gesellschaftlichem Gebrauchswert [*Harmonie* music: the private display and entertainment ensemble of the middle European nobility: between art and social value]," in *Musica Privata: Die Rolle der Musik im privaten Leben; Festschrift zum 65. Geburtstag von Walter Salmen*, ed. Monika Fink, Rainer Gstrein & Günter Mössmer. Innsbruck: Edition Helbling, 1991, pp. 151-65. [OCLC 25574067]
- Swartman, Thomas. "Horntransposition bei Mozart — hoch oder tief? Ueberlegungen zur Aufführungspraxis [Horn transposition in Mozart: high or low? Reflections on performance practice]." *Das Orchester* 39, no. 9 (1991): 979-83.
- Talbot, Michael. *Tomaso Albinoni: The Venetian Composer and his World*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1990. [OCLC 20828363]
Includes a discussion of Albinoni's trumpet sonatas and incidental notes on obbligato parts for trumpet and horn in his vocal music.
- Thelander, Kristin. "Carl Oestreich: A Study of His Life, Historic Position and Solo Horn Music." *The Horn Call Annual* 2 (1990): 49-76.
- Thompson, Brian Ernest. "A History of the Early Sources of Mozart Horn Concertos K. 412/514, K. 417, K. 447, and K. 495." *The Horn Call Annual* 1 (1989): 2-19.
See also the letter by Hans Pizka in 2 (1990): 114-15.
- Wates, John. "Mozart and the Horn." *The Horn Call* 22, no. 1 (October 1991): 43-45.
Reprinted from the *British Horn Society Newsletter*, January 1991.
- Webb, John. "Post Horns with Finger-Holes." *The Galpin Society Journal* 44 (March 1991): 157-58.
A follow-up to David Rycroft, "Post Horns with Finger-holes: Some Queries" in 43 (1990): 159-61, and Albert Hiller, "Finger-holes in Post Horns: An Explanation" in *ibid.*, 161-64.
- Weiner, Howard. "Giovanni Martino Cesare and his Editors." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 3 (1991): 56-64.
Lists errata for the modern editions of Cesare's *Musicali melodie per voci et instrumenti* (Munich, 1621).

Whipple, James F. "Mozart Excerpt." *The Horn Call* 22, no. 1 (October 1991): 68-69.
A query about the transpositions in the horn parts of Mozart's Serenade No. 12, KV 388.

Willener, Alfred. *Pour une sociologie de l'interprétation musicale: le cas du "Concerto pour trompette" de Haydn* [Towards a sociology of musical interpretation: the case of the Haydn trumpet concerto]. Lausanne: Editions Payot, 1990. [OCLC 25397908 or 25407015]

Wind, Rainer. "Nur 'Aufwärm-Töne' oder mehr? Joseph Haydn's Trumpetenkoncert und die neuerfundene Klappentrompete [Only 'warming-up tones' or more? Joseph Haydn's trumpet concerto and the newly invented keyed trumpet]." *Instrumentenbau Zeitschrift* 44 (September 1991): 25-26.

Winkler, Klaus. "Die Posaune und ihr Repertoire — Wechselbeziehungen zwischen Musik und Umwelt vom 15. bis zum 18. Jahrhundert [The trombone and its repertory: interrelations between music and milieu from the 15th to the 18th century]," in *Musikgeographie* (see above).

_____. "Entstehung und Ausbreitung der Bläsermusik bei der Herrnhuter Brüdergemeinde im 18. Jahrhundert [The origin and dissemination of wind music among the Moravian Brethren in the 18th century]," in *Musikgeographie* (see above).

Zechmeister, Gerhard. "The Development of the Vienna Concert Tuba." *Brass Bulletin* 75 (1991): 44-47.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Most of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are

as follows:

Brass Bulletin CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland.

Early Music Journals Subscriptions Department, Oxford University Press, Pinkhill House, Southfield Road, Eynsham OX8 1JJ, England.

Fontes artis musicae Bärenreiter-Verlag, Postfach 100329, D-3500 Kassel, Germany.

The Galpin Society Journal Pauline Holden, Secretary, The Galpin Society, 38 Eastfield Road, Western Park, Leicester, LE3 6FE, England.

The Horn Call and *The Horn Call Annual* International Horn Society, P.O. Box 1724, Durant, OK 74702-1724.

Imago musicae Duke University Press, P.O. Box 6697, College Station, Durham, NC 27708.

Instrumentenbau Zeitschrift Franz Schmitt, Kaiserstrasse 99-101, 5200 Siegburg, Postfach 1831, Germany.

ITA Journal Box 5336, Denton, TX 76203.

ITG Journal Bryan Goff, School of Music, Florida State University, Tallahassee, FL 32306-2098.

Journal of Band Research Troy State University Press, Troy, AL 36082.

Journal of the American Musicological Society 201 South 34th Street, Philadelphia, PA 19104-6313.

Kirchenmusikalisches Jahrbuch Musikwissenschaftliches Seminar der Universität Bonn, Am Hof 34, D-5300 Bonn, Germany.

Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent 93, rue de la Chapelle, Apt 166F, F-75018 Paris, France.

Mens en melodie Wegener Tijnl Tijdschriften Groep B.V., Jacques Veltmanstraat 29, 1065 EG Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Das Orchester B. Schott's Söhne, Carl-Zeiss-Strasse 1, D-6500 Mainz, Germany.

Recercare Libreria musicale italiana editrice, P.O. Box 198, I-55100 Lucca, Italy.

Revue de musicologie Société française de musicologie, 2, rue, Louvois, F-75002 Paris, France.

Studi verdiani c/o Broude Brothers Limited, 141 White Oaks Road, Williamstown, MA 01267.

Tijdschrift voor oude muziek Stichting Organisatie Oude Muziek Utrecht, Postbus 734, 3500 AS Utrecht, The Netherlands.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Public Services, Music Library, Indiana University. He has just edited Fluting and Dancing, a Festschrift for Betty Bang Mather, and is finishing a book on the Anglo-Venetian Bassano family and a research and information guide to the recorder (with Richard Griscom).

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1995-96

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertory and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between January and September 1996. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and articles in Western European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Anzenberger, Friedrich. "Method Books for Trumpet and Cornet using Stopped Notes in the 19th Century: An Annotated Bibliography." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 1-11.

_____. "Naturtrompetenschulen im 19. Jahrhundert [Methods for natural trumpet in the 19th century]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 59-79.

Anzenberger-Ramminger, Elisabeth. "Anton Fridrich, Leben und Werk [Anton Fridrich, life and work]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 9-57.

Babcock, Ronald D. *A Study of Sonata a quattro K. 347 and Alma Redemptoris Mater K. 186 by Johann Joseph Fux: The Historical Significance as Works for Alto Trombone and Performance Considerations, a Lecture Recital together with Three Recitals of Selected Works by J. Albrechtsberger, R. Gregson, W. Hartley, E. Bozza, Lars-Erik Larsson, A. Pryor and Others*. D.M.A. essay, University of North Texas, 1994. OCLC 31600391.

Ballaster i Gibert, Jordi. "Saint John the Baptist, Salome, and the Feast of Herod: Three Pictorial Subjects Related to Musical Iconography in the Kingdom of Aragon in the

14th and 15th Centuries." *RIdIM/RCI Newsletter* 20, no. 1 (Spring 1995): 29-36.

Baumann, Walter. "Trumpeters and Night Watchmen of old Zurich." *Brass Bulletin* 94 (1996): 16-19.

Extracted and translated from his *Plätze und Brücken der Zürcher Altstadt*. Zurich: Verlag Neue Zürcher Zeitung, 1982. ISBN 3858230472. OCLC 13468543.

Bevan, Clifford. "Any More for the Cimbasso?" *T.U.B.A. Journal* 23, no. 2 (Winter 1996): 50-53.

Biber, Walter. *Von der Bläsermusik zum Bläserorchester: Geschichte der Militärmusik und Bläsermusik in der Schweiz* [From wind music to wind orchestra: history of military music and wind music in Switzerland]. Luzern: Maihof, 1995. ISBN 3952075612.

Bignardelli, Maurizio. "Le composizioni per strumenti a fiato di Simone Mayr e Gaetano Donizetti: un catalogo di opere, in parte inedite in epoca moderna, il cui nucleo più cospicuo si trova nella Biblioteca Civica e nel museo Donizettiano di Bergamo [The wind compositions of Simone Mayr and Gaetano Donizetti: a catalog of works, partly unpublished in modern times, the principal part of which are found in the Biblioteca Civica and the Museo Donizettiano of Bergamo]." *I fiati* no. 10 (February-March 1996): 52-55.

Blomhert, Bastiaan. "The Harmonie Version of Beethoven's Seventh Symphony." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 91-102.

Böhmer, Karl. "Bach's mythologisches Geheimnis: Philip Pickett, Reinhard Goebel und das verborgene Programm der Brandenburgischen Konzerte [Bach's mythological mystery: Philip Pickett, Reinhard Goebel, and the secret program of the Brandenburg Concertos]." *Concerto: Das Magazin für alte Musik* no. 109 (December 1995/January 1996): 15-17.

Brixel, Eugen. "Zur Frage der Bläserorchester-Stimmung im k.(u.)k. Militärmusikwesen Österreich-Ungarns [On the question of the wind orchestra disposition in the imperial/royal military musical institutions of Austro-Hungary]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 127-148.

Brown, A. Peter. "The Trumpet Overture and Sinfonia in Vienna (1715-1822): Rise, Decline and Reformulation." In *Music in Eighteenth-Century Austria*, ed. David Wyn Jones. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996, pp. 13-69. ISBN 0521453496. OCLC 32431013 and 35275987.

- Bruenger, David. "Designing Classical Cadenzas." *ITA Journal* 23, no. 3 (Summer 1995): 30-35; 23, no. 4 (Fall 1995): 42-45.
- Buch, Joachim. "Stadtmusik Waldkirch und Harmonie St. Michael Thorn— Skizzen zur Besetzungsentwicklung zweier mitteleuropäischer Sinfonischer Blasorchester [Stadtmusik Waldkirch and Harmonie St. Michael Thorn: sketches of the development of the playing forces in two middle European symphonic wind orchestras]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 149-59.
- Burden, Michael. "‘For the Lustre of the Subject’: Music for the Lord Mayor’s Day in the Restoration." *Early Music* 23, no. 4 (November 1995): 585-602.
- Butler, George. "A Survey of Contemporary Makers of Early Trombones." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 8 (Summer 1995): 42-50.
- Camus, Raoul. "Some New Tools in Early American Band Research." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 161-82.
- Cipolla, Frank J. "Patrick S. Gilmore, The Boston Years and Beyond." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 183-87.
- Collins, Tim. "So, How Many Holes is a Baroque Trumpet Supposed to Have?" *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 9 (Summer 1996): 11-15.
- Csiba, Gisela and Jozsef. "Die Barocktrompete — eine Begriffsverwirrung? [The Baroque trumpet — a conceptual confusion?]" *Das Orchester* 44, no. 6 (1996): 19-20.
- Dauer, Robin Lee. *Three Works for Voice and French Horn with Accompaniment*. D.M.A. essay, University of Cincinnati, 1994. OCLC 33816373.
Includes a discussion of Johann Sebastian Bach’s aria "Quoniam tu solus santus" from the B-minor Mass.
- Downey, Peter. "On Sounding the Trumpet and Beating the Drum in 17th-Century England." *Early Music* 24, no. 2 (May 1996): 263-77.
See also the correspondence between Downey and Peter Holman, "On Sounding the Trumpet and Grinding the Axe," in 24, no. 3 (August 1996): 538-40.
- _____. "Trumpet Style in 17th-Century France and the Music of *Les Trompettes du Roy*." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 67-99.
- Dudgeon, Ralph. "A Conversation with John Wallace and Trevor Herbert." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 9 (Summer 1996): 33-36.

Ecklund, Peter, and Jeffrey Nussbaum. "An Interview with Herbert Heyde." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 8 (Summer 1995): 11-16.

Edgett, Bryan J. Joseph Arnold Gros' *Concerto in D major for Trumpet and Strings: A Critical Edition*. D.A. essay, University of Northern Colorado, 1994. OCLC 32327235.

Edwards, Melissa Michele. *Mozart and the Horn: Aria No. 13 from "Mitridate, Re di Ponto," K. 87*. D.M.A. essay, The University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 1995. OCLC 34003883 and 34012344.

Eisensmith, Kevin Eugene. *Joseph Riepel's "Concerto in D a clarino principale": A Performing Edition with Background and Commentary*. D.M.A. essay, Temple University, 1994. OCLC 31419896 and 31734950.

Federhofer, Hellmut. "Die Grazer Stadtmusikanten und die privilegierte Stadtmusikantenkompanie [Graz town musicians and the town music guild]." In Federhofer, *Musik und Geschichte: Aufsätze aus nichtmusikalischen Zeitschriften* [Music and history: articles from non-music periodicals]. Musikwissenschaftliche Publikationen Hochschule für Musik und Darstellende Kunst Frankfurt/Main, 5. Hildesheim: Georg Olms, 1996, 129-57.

Reprinted from *Zeitschrift des historischen Vereines für Steiermark* 42 (1951): 91-118

_____. "Die landschaftlichen Trompeter und Heerpauker in Steiermark [The regional trumpeters and kettle drummers in Steiermark]." In Federhofer, *Musik und Geschichte*, 19-61.

Reprinted from *Zeitschrift des historischen Vereines für Steiermark* 40 (1949): 63-102.

_____. "Die landschaftlichen Trompeter und Heerpauker in Steiermark: Namensverzeichnis [The regional trumpeters and kettle drummers in Steiermark: name index]." In Federhofer, *Musik und Geschichte*, 62-81.

Reprinted from *Adler. Zeitschrift für Genealogie und Heraldik* 16 (1950): 33-40, 52-54.

_____. "Die Stadttürmermeister von Leoben [The night watch directors of Leoben]." In Federhofer, *Musik und Geschichte*, 82-89.

Reprinted from *Blätter für Heimatkunde* 23 (1949): 109-16.

Genesi, Mario Giuseppe. "Utilizzazione manieristico-decorativa di strumentari standardizzati nelle pitture chiesastiche tra XVII e XVIII secolo: quattro casi della provincia piacentina [Manneristic/decorative use of mass-produced instruments in the church paintings of the 17th and 18th centuries: four cases from the province of Piacenza]." *RIdIM/RCI Newsletter* 20, no. 1 (Spring 1995): 18-28.

- Gifford, Robert M. "The American March. The Development of a Genre from the Eighteenth Century to the Present." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 189-203.
- Gross, Steven Lee. *The Evolution and Nomenclature of Bach's Horn Parts*. D.M.A. essay, University of Cincinnati, 1994. OCLC 32499201 and 33253426.
- Habla, Bernhard. "Carl Maria von Webers Oberon-Ouverture in gedruckten Bearbeitungen für Bläser- und Blasorchesterbesetzungen [Carl Maria von Weber's Oberon Overture in printed arrangements for wind and wind-orchestra forces]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 205-44.
- Hakelberg, Dietrich. "A Medieval Wind Instrument from Schlettwein, Thuringia." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 185-96.
- Heater, Eva Marie. "Early Hunting Horn Calls and their Transmission: Some New Discoveries." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 123-41.
- Heidler, Manfred. "Materialen zur Geschichte von Tenorhorn und Bariton [Documents on the history of the tenor and baritone horns]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 245-59.
- Holmgren, Fred. "1996 Survey of Natural Trumpet Makers." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 9 (Summer 1996): 15-19.
- Jooste, Stephanus. "The Württemberg Cape Regiment (1787-1791) and its Musicians." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 279-91.
- Kenyon de Pascual, Beryl. "Clarines and Trompetas: Some Further Observations." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 100-06.
- _____. "The Ophicleide in Spain, With an Appendix on Some 19th-Century Brass Tutors in Spain." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 142-48.
- Kinder, Keith. "Franz Liszt's Music for Chorus and Winds—The Important Works." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 293-310.
- Kircheis, Michael. "Discovery of the 'Turmsonaten' Written in 1803." *Brass Bulletin* 93 (1996): 81-84.
Concerns the recent discovery of four "tower sonatas" written by Friedrich Schneider at the age of 17.

- Kirk, Douglas. "Instrumental Music in Lerma, c.1608." *Early Music* 23, no. 3 (August 1995): 393-408.
- Klein, Linda Marie. *The College Teacher's Guide to the Cornett*. D.M.A. essay, The University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1994. OCLC 32575692 and 34054630.
- Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, ed. Wolfgang Suppan. *Alta Musica*, 18. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1996. ISBN 3795208475. OCLC 34989575.
- Körner, Friedrich. "A 349 Year Old Horn Made by Michael Nagel of Graz." *Brass Bulletin* 93 (1996): 39-43.
- Lapie, Raymond. "The Braun Brothers: Two Names, One Method." *ITA Journal* 23, no. 1 (Winter 1995): 30-31.
- Lengová, Jana. "Die Musiksammlung des Militärkapellmeisters Karl Kaspar Richter (1848-1902) in Trenčín [The music collection of the military ensemble director Karl Kaspar Richter (1848-1902) in Trenčín]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 335-52.
- Mathez, Jean-Pierre. "Evolution of the Trumpet Ensembles." *Brass Bulletin* 94 (1996): 33-36.
- Mayer, Fred J. *The Jazz Process: Brass Bands to Swing Bands. Music in Detroit, 1850-1930*. M.A. thesis, Michigan State University, 1995. OCLC 33930361 and 33930369.
- McGrattan, Alexander. "The Trumpet in Funeral Ceremonies in Scotland and England during the 17th Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 168-84.
- Meucci, Renato. "Una famiglia di costruttori di ottoni: i Pelitti a Milano nel XIX secolo [A family of brass makers: the Pelitti in Milan in the 19th century]." *Ifiati* no. 9 (December 1995/January 1996): 52-59; no. 10 (February-March 1996): 42-47.
Translated from *Historic Brass Society Journal* 6 (1994): 304-53.
- Myers, Arnold, and Frank Tomes. "PCB Cornets and Webster Trumpets: Rudall Carte's Patent Conical Bore Brasswind." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 107-22.
- Nussbaum, Jeffrey. "A Conversation with Early Brass Players Susan Addison and David Staff." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 8 (Summer 1995): 3-11.
- _____. "Cornetto Discography." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 8 (Summer 1995): 21-41.

- Reimer, Mark U. "Report on the Status of Research in the United States on American Community Bands." *In Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn* 1994, 375-404.
- Rice, John A. "The Musical Bee: References to Mozart and Cherubini and Hummel's 'New Year' Concerto." *Music & Letters* 77, no. 3 (August 1996): 401-24.
- Rieder, Bob. "No Hot Air Here." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 9 (Summer 1996): 20-25.
An interview with Barry Bauguess, Igino Conforzi, Fred Holmgren, Friedemann Immer, Paul Plunkett, and Edward H. Tarr.
- Robinson, Richard. "An Interview with Ophicleide, Serpent, and Tuba Player Tony George." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 7 (Summer 1995): 51-53.
- Rocchetti, Gabriele. "Benedetto Bergonzi e il corno da caccia a chiavi [Benedetto Bergonzi and the keyed *corno da caccia*]." *I fiati* 2, no. 9 (December 1995/January 1996): 44-51.
Reprinted from *Recercare* 2 (1990): 151-69.
- Ros-Fábregas, Emilio. "Music and Ceremony during Charles V's Visit to Barcelona." *Early Music* 23, no. 3 (August 1995): 374-91.
- Schmidt, Paul. "An Interview with Michel Godard." Winter 1995 *T.U.B.A. Journal* 22, no. 2 (Winter 1995): Abridged version in *Serpent Newsletter*, 27 September 1995, 2-4.
- Schneider, Dennis. *The Music for Solo Trumpet and Cornet with Orchestra from ca. 1870 to 1910 in the Edwin A. Fleischer Collection of Orchestral Music*. D.M.A. essay, The University of Nebraska-Lincoln, 1995. OCLC 32796697.
- Schwindt, Nicole. "Hans Michlich's bildliche Darstellung der Münchner Hofkapelle von 1570 [Hans Michlich's pictorial representation of the Munich court ensemble of 1570]." *Acta musicologica* 68, no. 1 (January-June 1996): 48-85.
- Shive, Clyde S., Jr. "Harmoniemusik and the Early Wind Band in the United States." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn* 1994, 405-21.
- Smith, André M. "The Discovery of the X-Rays and the Origin of Mouthpiece Practice for Brass Instruments: A Centennial Review." *ITG Journal* 20, no. 2 (December 1995): 4-26.
- Smith, Susan. "A Cacophony of Cornettists." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 9 (Summer 1996): 26-32.
Interview with Michael Collver, Bruce Dickey, Stephen Escher, Douglas Kirk, Jean Tubéry, and Jeremy West.

- Snedeker, Jeffrey L., trans. "Method for High-Horn and Low-Horn by Louis-François Dauprat, IV." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 36-66.
- Sprung, David R. "'Hidden' Stopped Notes in 19th-Century French Opera." *The Horn Call* 26, no. 3 (May 1996): 17-25.
- Tarr, Edward H. "A Collector's Life: An Interview with Ernst W. Buser on the Occasion of his 70th Birthday." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 8 (Summer 1995): 16-21.
- Vigl, Karl H. "Spuren klassisch-romantischer Formtradition in der Südtiroler Blasmusik [Traces of the Classical/Romantic musical tradition in the wind music of the southern Tyrol]." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 423-34.
- Weiner, Howard. "Andreas Nemetz's *Neueste Posaun-schule*: An Early Viennese Trombone Method." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 7 (1995): 12-35.
- Whitwell, David. "Improvisation in Harmoniemusik Literature." In *Kongressbericht Abony/Ungarn 1994*, 435-39.
- Wood, Julia K. "'A Flowing Harmony': Music on the Thames in Restoration London." *Early Music* 23, no. 4 (November 1995): 553-81.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

Acta musicologica Bärenreiter-Verlag, Neuweilerstrasse 15, CH-4015 Basel, Switzerland.

Brass Bulletin P.O. Box 576, CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland.

Concerto: Das Magazine für alte Musik Concerto Verlag, Postfach 27 04 47, D-50510 Köln, Germany.

The Consort: European Journal of Early Music Peter Ritchie, Lavant Park Farm, Chichester, Sussex PO18 9AH, England.

Early Music Journals Subscriptions Department, Oxford University Press, Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, England.

The Horn Call Ellen Powley, Executive Secretary, International Horn Society, 2220 N. 1400 E., Provo UT 84604.

I fiati Accademia Italiana del Flauto, Via Innocenzo X, 43, I-00152 Roma, Italy.

ITA Journal Vern Kagarice, Box 5336, Denton TX 76203.

ITG Journal Bryan Goff, School of Music, Florida State University, Tallahassee FL 32306-2098.

Music & Letters Journals Subscriptions Department, Oxford University Press, Walton Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, England.

Das Orchester Schott Musik International, Postfach 3640, D-55026 Mainz, Germany.

RIdIM/RCI Newsletter Research Center for Musical Iconography, 33 W 42nd Street, New York NY 10036.

T.U.B.A. Journal T.U.B.A., Steven Bryant, Treasurer, Department of Music, University of Texas at Austin, Austin TX 78712-1208.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the Music Library at Indiana University. His most recent books are: (Richard Griscom, co-author) The Recorder: A Guide to Writings about the Instrument for Players and Researchers (New York: Garland, 1994) and (with Roger Prior) The Bassanos: Venetian Musicians and Instrument Makers in England, 1531-1665 (Aldershot, Hampshire: Scolar Press; Brookfield, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 1995).

A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1997-98

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertory and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between November 1997 and November 1998 (including some from earlier years). I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in Western European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Adams, Peter H. *Antique Brass Wind Instruments: Identification and Price Guide*. Atglen, PA: Schiffer Publishing, 1998. ISBN: 076430027X (pbk.). OCLC 38934732.

Ahrens, Christian. "Technological Innovations in Nineteenth-Century Instrument Making and Their Consequences." *The Musical Quarterly* 80, no. 2 (Summer 1996): 332-39.

Anzenberger, Friedrich. "The Streitweiser Collection of Brass Instruments at the Kremsegg Castle: Wind Music Rarities — Brass Instruments Down Through History." *Brass Bulletin* no. 102 (1998): 50-56. See also Jean-Pierre Mathez, "Franz Xaver Streitweiser," *ibid.*, pp. 40-47.

_____. "Wiener Trompeten- und Flügelhornschulen im 19. Jahrhundert: Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Instrumentalmusik-Pädagogik [Viennese trumpet and flugelhorn methods in the 19th century: A contribution to the history of instrumental music pedagogy]." In *Bekanntnis zur österreichischen Musik in Lehre und Forschung: Eine*

Festschrift für Eberhard Wurzl zum achtzigsten Geburtstag am 1. November 1995, pp. 17-30. Vienna: Vom Pasqualatihaus, 1996. OCLC 36928941.

Anzenberger-Ramminger, Elisabeth. "Das Inventar des k.k. Genie-Regiments Nr. 2. Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Musikern der Genie-Regimenter [The inventory of the royal and imperial Engineer Regiment No. 2: a contribution to the history of the musicians of the regiment]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 157-87. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998. ISBN 3795209420. OCLC 40297700.

Barclay, Robert. "Design, Technology and Manufacture before 1800." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 24-37.

_____. "Some Bubbles Prick'd: A Discussion of Early Brass Mythology." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 71-77.

Barnett, Gregory Richard. *Musical Issues of the Late-Seicento: Style, Social Function, and Theory in Emilian Instrumental Music*. Ph.D. dissertation, Princeton University, 1997. Mentions the Bolognese trumpet sonata in passing.

Baroncini, Rodolfo. "Organici e 'orchestre' in Italia e in Francia nel XVII secolo: Differenze e omologie [Ensembles and 'orchestras' in Italy and France in the 17th century: differences and similarities]." *Studi musicali* 25, no. 1-2 (1996): 373-408.

_____. "Se canta dalli cantori overo se sona dalli sonadori?: Voci e strumenti tra quattro e cinquecento ['To be sung by the singers or played by the instrumentalists': Voices and instruments in the 15th and 16th centuries]." *Rivista italiana di musicologia* 32, no. 2 (1997): 327-65.

Baumann, Hella. "The Horn as a Symbol." *The Horn Call* 28, no. 4 (August 1998): 37-42.

Bevan, Clifford. "Cimbasso Research and Performance Practice: An Update." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 289-99.

_____. "The Low Brass." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 143-56.

_____. "The Year of the Ophicleide?" *TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 24, no. 4 (Summer 1997): 37.

Beeks, Graydon. "‘Exit, Pursued by a Bear’: The Haymarket Opera Orchestra and Handel’s Arrival in England." *Händel-Jahrbuch* 42/43 (1996-97): 55-67.

Berglund, Lars. "Sinkan i Sverige [The cornett in Sweden]." *Tidig Musik: Magasinet för musik från medeltid, renessans och barock* 1/97, p. 12.

Blazekovic, Zdravko. *Music in Medieval and Renaissance Astrological Imagery*. Ph.D. dissertation, City University of New York, 1997.

Focuses on illustrations by Fendulus, ca. 1200, of 148 musical instruments, including trumpet, in an abridgement of Abu Ma’Sar’s astrological manuscript.

Blonk, Stefan, Javier Bonet-Manrique, Oliver Kersken, and Thomas Müller. "Hermann Baumann: A Pioneer on Natural Horn." *The Horn Call* 28, no. 4 (August 1998): 59-62.

Bomberger, E. Douglas. "Charting the Future of *Zukunftsmusik* : Liszt and the Weimar Orchesterschule." *The Musical Quarterly* 80, no. 2 (Summer 1996): 348-61.

Boxman, David. "Analyses of GCSE Set Works: Haydn — Trumpet Concerto (London Examinations)." *Music Teacher* 76, no. 10 (October 1997): 28-29, 31.

The GCSE (General Certificate of Secondary Education) is a British examination at the secondary-school level.

Briney, Bruce C. *The Development of Russian Trumpet Methodology and its Influence on the American School*. D. Music thesis, Northwestern University, 1997. OCLC 39321679.

_____. "The Methods and Etudes of Wilhelm Wurm." *ITG Journal* 21, no. 3 (February 1997): 51-64.

Brixel, Eugen. "Musiksoziologische Aspekte im kulturellen Wirkungsbereich der altösterreichischen Militärmusik vor 1918 [Musico-sociological aspects of the cultural area of influence of the old Austrian military music before 1918]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 59-103. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Büchler, Alfred. "*Olifan, Graïslas, Buisines and Taburs*: The Music of War and the Structure and Dating of the Oxford *Roland*." *Olifant* 17, no. 3/4 (Fall 1992-Winter 1993): 145-67.

The *Roland* in question is the *Chanson de Roland*.

- Bureau, Yannick. "Perinet et la trompe de chasse [Perinet and the hunting horn]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 18 (February 1996): 32-33.
- Burgess, Phillipa Edith. *An Examination of Function, Venue, and Sources in the Repertoire of Mid-nineteenth-century American Brass Bands*. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Kentucky, 1997. OCLC 39795051.
- Butler, George. "Ein Überblick über die Werkstätten für Renaissance- und Barockposaunen in der heutigen Zeit." *IPV-Journal: Das Schallstück* no. 18 (1996): 10-18; no. 19 (1996): 4-12.
 German translation of "A Survey of Contemporary Makers of Early Trombone." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* 8 (Summer 1995): 42-50. Translated and updated by Reinke Eisenberg.
- Carter, Stewart. "Georges Kastner on Brass Instruments: The Influence of Technology on the Theory of Orchestration." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 171-92.
- Carter, Stewart, ed. *A Performer's Guide to Seventeenth-century Music*. New York: Schirmer Books, 1997. ISBN 0028704924. OCLC 36485758.
- Carter, Stewart, ed. *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship: Proceedings of the International Historic Brass Symposium, Amherst, 1995*. Bucina: The Historic Brass Society Series, 2. Stuyvesant, NY: Pendragon Press, 1997. ISBN: 0945193971. OCLC 37398029.
- "Catalogue Anton Huller de Graslitz [A catalogue of the firm of Anton Huller in Graslitz, Bohemia]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 21 (April 1998): 17-30.
- Chiverton, Roy. "A Bit More on Mouthpieces." *FoMRHI Quarterly* no. 84 (July 1996): 34; Comm. 1464.
- _____. "Brass Mouthpieces." *FoMRHI Quarterly* no. 83 (April 1996): 39-44; Comm. 1433.
- Cools, Jacques. "La carnyx, instrument militaire celte [The carnyx: Celtic military instrument]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 21 (April 1998): 8-9.
- Crossland, James Patrick. "An Orchestration of *Cavatine*, Op.144, by Camille Saint-Saëns Composed for Tenor Trombone and Piano." B.M. thesis, University of Southern Mississippi, 1996. OCLC 37707028.

- Csiba, Gisela. "Zum Begriff 'Barocktrompete' [On the concept 'Baroque trumpet']." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 255-62. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.
- Delile, Patrick. "Patrick Delile: Catalogue No. 2 de la collection d'instruments à vent. [Patrick Delile: second catalog of his collection of wind instruments]." *Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, Catalogue spécial No. VI (1996).
- Dickey, Bruce. "The Cornett." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 51-67.
- _____. "Cornett and Sackbut." In Carter, ed., *Performer's Guide to Seventeenth-century Music*, pp. 98-115.
- Dickey, Bruce. "Ornamentation in Early-seventeenth-century Italian Music." In Carter, ed., *Performer's Guide to Seventeenth-century Music*, pp. 245-68.
- Dodson, Rebecca Margaret. *A Descriptive Discography of Horn Music based on the Curtiss Blake Collection*. D.M.A. thesis, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1997. OCLC 39532213.
- Doucette, Rebecca L. "Trumpet Chamber Music: an Analysis of the Trumpet's Role within the Chamber Repertory." B.A. thesis, Williams College, 1997. OCLC 36931901.
- Downey, Peter. "From the Rim to the Hub: Fortuna's Wheel and Instrumental Music at the German-Speaking Renaissance Courts." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 1-18.
- _____. "Monteverdi's 'Mass of Thanksgiving' — Aspects of Tension in Historical Musicology." In *The Maynooth International Musicological Conference, 1995: Selected Proceedings, Part One*, ed. Patrick F. Devine and Harry White, pp. 152-88. *Irish Musical Studies*, 4. Blackrock, Co. Dublin: Four Courts Press, 1996.
- Dudgeon, Ralph T. "Keyed Brass." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 131-42.
- Dudgeon, Ralph T., Phillip Eastop, Trevor Herbert, and John Wallace. "Playing, Learning and Teaching Brass." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 193-206.

- Duffin, Ross W. "Cornets & Sagbuts': Some Thoughts on the Early Seventeenth-Century English Repertory for Brass." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 47-70.
- Eldridge, Niles. "Cornets & Consilience." *Civilization* 5, no. 5 (October/November 1998): 84-86.
- _____. "Evolution in the Marketplace." *Structural Change and Economic Dynamics* 8 (1997): 385-98.
- Both articles apply evolutionary theory to the history of the cornet.
- Ericson, John Q. "The Double Horn and its Invention in 1897." *The Horn Call* 28, no. 2 (February 1998): 31-33.
- Evans, Robert. "The Post-Classical Horn." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 207-16.
- Fanelli, Jean Grundy. "The Manfredini Family of Musicians of Pistoia, 1684-1803." *Studi musicali* 26, no. 1 (1997): 187-232.
- Freeman-Atwood, Jonathan. "Putting the Brit into Brass." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 54-60.
- Fulmer, Cassandra. *The Role of the Bass Trombone in Haydn's Die Schöpfung, Beethoven's Ninth Symphony, and Brahms's Fourth Symphony: a Tutorial Focusing on Historical Background and Preparation Suggestions*. D.M.A. thesis, Louisiana State University, 1998. OCLC 39174322.
- Garrett, Joshua. *Brahms's Horn Trio: Background and Analysis for Performers*. D.M.A. thesis, The Juilliard School, 1998. OCLC 39267196.
- George, Tony. "Ophicleide." *TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 24, no. 4 (Summer 1997): 36-37.
- _____. "The Ophicleide or 'The Chromatic Bullocks and How to Milk Them.'" *TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 23, no. 4 (Summer 1996): 28-29.
- Gilmore, Stephen P. "Patrick Sarsfield Gilmore: America's Prototypical Impresario." *Journal of Band Research* 34, no. 1 (Fall 1998): 69-100.

- Glover, Stephen L. "'Trumpet' in Samuel Johnson's *A Dictionary of the English Language* (1755)." *ITG Journal* 22, no. 4 (May 1998): 40-43.
- Grano, John Baptist. *Handel's Trumpeter: the Diary of John Grano*, ed. John Ginger. Bucina: The Historic Brass Society Series, no. 3. Stuyvesant, NY : Pendragon Press, 1998. ISBN 0945193963. OCLC 39614635.
- Herbert, Trevor. "Brass Bands and other Vernacular Brass Traditions." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 177-92.
- _____. "The Reconstruction of Nineteenth-Century Band Repertory: Towards a Protocol." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 193-222.
- _____. "The Repertoire of the Cyfarthfa Band is Unique among all Known Sources for Brass Music." *Brass Bulletin* no. 97 (1997): 38-44.
- _____. "'Sackbut': The Early Trombone." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 68-83.
- _____, and Margaret Sarkissian. "Victorian Bands and their Dissemination in the Colonies." *Popular Music* 16, no. 2 (May 1997): 165-79.
- _____, and John Wallace, ed. *The Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*. Cambridge & New York: Cambridge University Press, 1997. ISBN: 0521563437 (hardcover); 0521565227 (pbk.). OCLC 35849111.
- Heyde, Herbert. "The Brass-Instrument Makers Schmied of Pfaffendorf." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 91-113.
- Hiebert, Thomas. "A Case for Horn in D *basso* in the Early Eighteenth Century and its Effect on Horn-and-Trumpet Combinations." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 115-33.
- _____. "The Horn in the Baroque and Classical Periods." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 103-14.
- Hizer-Jenkins, Lynn. "Instruments and Gender in 19th-Century Music-Making." *NAC-WPI Journal* 44, no. 3 (Spring 1996): 4-12.
- Höfele, Bernhard. "Das öffentliche Militärkonzert im 19. Jahrhundert [The public military concert in the 19th century]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp.

49-57. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Hofer, Achim. "Wandlungen von der 'Bläser-' zur 'Blasmusik' im frühen 19. Jh.— musikalische, gesellschaftliche und ästhetische Implikationen [Changes from 'music for winds' to 'wind music' in the early 19th century: musical, social, and aesthetic implications]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 199-214. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Humphries, John. "Brass in Britain from the Earliest Times." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 37-40.

_____. "John Smithies: Trombonist and Enigma." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 62-64.

_____. "The Royal Academy of Music and its Tradition." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 42-52.

Hutchins, John. "Thomas Harper." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 78-82.

Irish, John Edward. *Trumpet Music from the Austro-Bohemian Region: a Survey of Selected Works for Trumpet from the Liechtenstein-Kastelkorn Archive of the Kroyňeřiz Court*. Dr. of Musical Arts thesis, University of Cincinnati, 1998. OCLC 39719174.

Jarrett, Michael D. *Giovanni Picchi's 'Canzoni da sonar': A Performance Edition of Three Works including Trombone Parts*. D.M.A. thesis, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 1998. OCLC 40272038, 40272058.

Jones, Mark, Arnold Myers, and Albert R. Rice. "A Provisional List of Quinticlavés (Alto Ophicleides) in Europe and the United States." *FoMRHI Quarterly* no. 86 (January 1997): 27-29; Comm. 1499.

Jooste, Stephanus. "Der Beitrag der Militärmusik und der 'zivilen' Blasmusik zur Kunstmusik Südafrikas im 19. Jahrhundert [The contribution of military music and 'civilian' wind music to the art music of South Africa in the 19th century]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 129-39. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Kalisch, Volker. "Posaunenchöre: Mission und Funktion [Trombone choirs: mission and function]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 263-74. *Alta*

Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Kernich, Aub, and Cliff Graue. *Angaston's Brass Bands and their Community Heritage Role, 1856-1971*. Tanunda, S. Australia: Aub Kernich, 1996. OCLC 38823381.

Kinder, Keith. "The Wind Ensemble Version of Franz Liszt's Mass in C minor." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 237-53. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Kirkland, Anthony B. *An Annotated Guide to Excerpts for Trumpet and Cornet from the Wind Band Repertoire*. D.M.A. thesis, University of Maryland at College Park, 1997. OCLC 40110642.

Knouse, Nola Reed. "American Moravian Brass Players: What Did They Play?" In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 135-49. Reprinted as "The American Moravian Brass Players: What Did They Play?" *Moravian Music Journal* 43, no. 1 (Spring 1998): 11-21.

Koshelev, Vladimir. "Trumpets, Cornets, Trombones, and Horns in the St. Petersburg Museum of Musical Instruments: A Checklist." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 223-37.

Kridel, Craig. "Gabriel in Black Paradise: The Trumpet at Shady Grove Camp Ground." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 263-70.

Kreyszig, Walter Kurt. "Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart's *Missa Brevis* in F-Dur, KV 192 (=186f): Zur fragmentarischen Überlieferung der Clarino I-Stimme (KV deest) in der Opoehinsky Collection of Music Manuscripts der Yale University [W.A. Mozart's *Missa Brevis* in F, KV 192 (=186f): On the fragmentary transmission of the first trumpet part (KV deest) in the Opoehinsky Collection of Music Manuscripts at Yale University]." *Studien zur Musikwissenschaft* 42 (1993): 181-89.

Leonard, Charlotte Anne. *The Role and Affekt of the Trombone in the Lutheran Church Music of Seventeenth-century Saxony and Thuringia*. Ph.D. dissertation, Duke University, 1997. OCLC 37254847, 38436242.

Link, Dorothea. "Vienna's Private Theatrical and Musical Life, 1783-92, as Reported by Count Karl Zinzendorf." *Journal of the Royal Musical Association* 122, no. 2 (1996): 205-57.

- Lüdeking, Udo. "Althorn oder Waldhorn? Anmerkungen zur Geschichte — Praktische Hinweise [Alto horn or hunting horn? Remarks on history; practical advice]." *Clarino: Internationale Zeitschrift für Bläsermusik* 7, no. 9 (September 1996): 21-23.
- Lundeen, Douglas. *The Natural Horn in the Orchestra: Compositions Combining Horns in Different Keys: a History*. D.M.A. thesis, University of Cincinnati, 1998. OCLC 39719209.
- Mallett, Edward Keith. *The Double Bell Euphonium: Design and Literature Past and Present*. Ph.D. dissertation, Michigan State University, 1996.
- Manrique, Javier Bonet. "Classical Horn, Baroque Horn or corno da tirarsi? The World in 1750 Was Of Course Very Different from That in Which We Live Today." *Brass Bulletin* no. 100 (1997): 20-30.
- Manson, David R. *Trombone Obligatos with Voice in the Austrian Sacred Music of the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries: Representative Excerpts with Historical Introduction and Commentary*. Dr. of Musical Arts thesis, University of Cincinnati, 1997. OCLC 39400514.
- Marissen, Michael. "On Linking Bach's F-Major Sinfonia and his Hunt Cantata." *Bach: The Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute* 23, no. 2 (Fall/Winter 1992): 31-46.
- Martínez Gil, Carlos. "Ofrécese compañía de ministriles para tocar en fiestas (sobre la formación de una compañía de ministriles en Toledo en 1668) [On offer: a company of minstrels to play at feasts (on the formation of a company of minstrels in Toledo in 1668)]." *Revista de musicología* 19, no. 1-2 (1996): 105-32.
- Mathez, Jean-Pierre. "Antoine Courtois, Paris." *Brass Bulletin* no. 97 (1997): 76-85.
- Matlick, Eldon. *Robert Schumann and the Horn: a Study of the Valved Horn used in Symphonic and Solo Works*. D.Mus. document, Indiana University, 1997. OCLC 39040395
- Maunder, Richard. "Viennese Wind-instrument Makers, 1700-1800." *The Galpin Society Journal* 51 (1998): 170-91.
- McGee, Timothy J. "Giovanni Cellini, Piffaro di Firenze [Giovanni Cellini, *piffaro* of Florence]." *Rivista italiana di musicologia* 32, no. 2 (1997): 201-21.
Cellini was a member of the Florentine pifferi from 1480 to 1514.
- McGrattan, Alexander. "The Solo Trumpet in Scotland, 1695-1800." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 79-90.

Meek, Harold. *Horn & Conductor: Reminiscences of a Practitioner with a Few Words of Advice*. Rochester, NY: University of Rochester Press, 1997. ISBN 1878822837. OCLC 35636932.

Includes a chapter on historical issues and repertoire.

Meier, Edwin. "Das Trompetenmuseum in Bad Sackingen [The trumpet museum in Bad Sackingen]." *Intrada: Zeitschrift für alte Musik* 2, no. 2 (1996): 40-42.

Miller, Betsy G. "Anna Teresa Berger, Cornet Virtuoso." *ITG Journal* 22, no. 3 (February 1998): 43-49.

Mills, Kathleen. "Valves are for Sissies." *Early Music America* 3, no. 4 (Winter 1997-1998): 39-41.

Describes the Baroque trumpet-making workshop of Bob Barclay and Rick Seraphinoff at Indiana University, summer 1997.

Mitchell, Jon C. "The Kneller Hall Archives: The British Military Band Tradition in Manuscript." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 11-30. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.

Mitchell, Preston. "Biblical References to the Trumpet." *ITG Journal* 21, no. 4 (May 1997): 66-69.

"Musical Patents of the Past, no. 1: Tremolo for Trumpets." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 21 (April 1998): 17.

A transcript of a patent taken out by Charles Meister of Philadelphia on 7 February 1888 for an improved cornet mouthpiece that includes a special valve to aid the production of double and triple tonguing as well as tremolos.

Myers, Arnold. "Referring to Comm 1433, 'Brass Mouthpieces.'" *FoMRHI Quarterly* no. 84 (July 1996): 35-36; Comm. 1465.

A response to Roy Chiverton (see above).

_____. "Design, Technology and Manufacture since 1800." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 115-30.

_____. "Historical Instrument Section: Museums." *TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 24, no. 3 (Spring 1997): 30-31.

- _____. "Historical Instrument Section: Museums." *TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 25, no. 3 (Spring 1998): 32-33.
- _____. "The Horn Function and Brass Instrument Character." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 239-62.
- _____. "How Brass Instruments Work." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 19-23.
- Myers, Herbert W. "Praetorius' Pitch: Some Revelations of the *Theatrum Instrumentorum*." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 29-45.
- Newsome, Roy. *Brass Roots: A Hundred Years of Brass Bands and their Music, 1836-1936*. Aldershot and Brookfield VT: Ashgate, 1998. ISBN: 1859281680 (hb: alk. paper). OCLC 36961062.
- Niemisto, Paul. "A Brief History of the Finnish Brass Band." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 10 (Summer 1997): 13-16.
- Nixon, David Kent. "The History and Development of the Valved Brass Tuba." M. Music Ed. thesis, University of Central Oklahoma, 1997. OCLC 39287351.
- Norris, Paul Byron. *Kenilworth Town Band*. Kenilworth: Odibourne Press, 1996. ISBN 0951514784 (pbk). OCLC 39075224.
- Nussbaum, Jeffrey. "Cornetto Discography. II." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 11 (Summer 1998): 13-22.
- _____. "Feeling in Music: An Historical View, or: H.G. Wells Revisited." *WASBE Journal* 5 (1998): 53-55.
- Olson, Rolf Stefan. *The History and Development of the Dalesburg Cornet Band*. D.A. thesis, University of Northern Colorado, 1997. OCLC 39825576.
- Ossi, John Kenneth. *An Annotated International Bibliography of Doctoral Research Papers Pertaining to the Trumpet*. Mus. D. thesis, Florida State University, 1997. OCLC 37271774.
- Plank, Steven E. "Trumpet and Horn." In Carter, ed., *Performer's Guide to Seventeenth-century Music*, pp. 116-32.

- Polk, Keith. "Brass Instruments in Art Music in the Middle Ages." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 38-50.
- _____. "The Invention of the Slide Principle and the Earliest Trombone or, The Birth of a Notion." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 19-27.
- Rekward, Susan J. "The Horn at the Paris Conservatoire and its *Morceaux de concours* to 1996." M.A. thesis, University of North Texas, 1997. OCLC 38224306.
- Rizner, Fred. "Ein Heldenleben: The Horn as Protagonist." *The Horn Call* 28, no. 2 (February 1998): 43-45.
- Robins, Brian. "John Marsh and Provincial Music Making in Eighteenth-Century England." *Research Chronicle* 29 (1996): 96-142.
- Robinson, Richard. "Peter Bassano: Sackbut, Trombone Player, Conductor, Teacher, and Polymath." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 11 (Summer 1998): 28-29.
- Sarkissian, Margaret. "Lip-vibrated Instruments of the Ancient and Non-Western World." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 5-18.
- Schlesinger, Kathleen. "'Horn': Encyclopædia Britannica, 11th edition (1910-11)." *The Horn Call Annual* 9 (1997): 7-21.
- Schuman, Leah J. "The Legendary Trumpeters of St. Petersburg." *ITG Journal* 21 no. 2 (December 1996): 48-51.
- Selianin, Anatoly; ed. Edward H. Tarr. "Wilhelm Wurm (1826-1904)." *ITG Journal* 21, no. 3 (February 1997): 44-50, 64.
- Seraphinoff, Richard. "A Report on Natural Horn Makers World-wide." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 10 (Summer 1997): 9-13.
- Serwer, Howard. "The World of the Water Music." *Händel-Jahrbuch* 42/43 (1996-97): 101-11.
- Sharp, David B., Arnold Myers, and D. Murray Campbell. "Using Pulse Reflectometry to Compare the Evolution of the Cornet and the Trumpet in the 19th and 20th Centuries." *Proceedings of the International Symposium of Musical Acoustics: Institute of Acoustics, ISMA 97*, 19, part 5 (1997).

- Sherwin, Doron David. "Sinkans guldålder [The golden age of the cornetto]." *Tidig Musik: Magasinet för musik från medeltid, renässans och barock* 1/97, pp. 11-12.
- Shifrin, Ken. "Trombone Myth Busters No. 2: Rossini Wrote the *William Tell Overture* for Valve Trombones — NOT!!!" *ITA Journal* 25, no. 4 (Fall 1997): 44-47.
- Smith, André M. "The True Origins of the Modern Brass Quintet." *The Brass Player*, Winter 1996, pp. 1-4, 23.
- Smithers, Don L. "Anomalies of *Tonart* and *Stimmton* in the First Version of Bach's *Magnificat* (BWV 243a)." *Bach: Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute* 27, no. 2 (Fall-Winter 1996): 1-59.
- Snedeker, Jeffrey L. "Fétis and the 'Meifred' Horn." *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 23 (1997): 121-46.
- _____. "The Horn in Early America." In Carter, ed., *Perspectives in Brass Scholarship*, pp. 151-69.
- _____. "A 'New' Piece for Natural Horn: *Variations pour le cor* by Charles Zeuner (ca. 1830)." *The Horn Call* 28, no. 1 (November 1997): 41-44.
- Starzer, Helene. "Herkunft und Jugendzeit des Komponisten Joseph Starzer [Origins and youth of the composer Joseph Starzer]." *Studien zur Musikwissenschaft* 46 (1998): 77-94.
The Starzer family were brass players and makers.
- Stoffel, Lawrence F. "Russian and Western Influences on Nicholai Rimsky-Korsakov as Inspector of Naval Bands." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 31-47. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.
- Stradner, Gerhard. "The Evolution of the Pitch of Cornetts and Trombones at the Time of Scheidt and Buxtehude." In *Dietrich Buxtehude and Samuel Scheidt: An Anniversary Tribute: The Proceedings of the International Buxtehude/Scheidt Festival and Conference at the University of Saskatchewan, November 1987*, comp. Isabelle Mills and Walter Kreyszig, pp. 106-16. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan, 1988.
- Strauchen, Bradley. "Giovanni Puzzi — A Yardstick for Horn Playing in 19th Century Britain." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 84-89.

- Stubbs, Jane. *Farndon: the Friendly Band*. [Farndon?]: Farndon & District Brass Band, 1997. ISBN 0953008509 (pbk). OCLC 39158351.
- Tarr, Edward H. "The Trumpet before 1800." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 84-102.
- Teaching Brass*. London: Rhinegold Pub., 1998. OCLC 39935352. Includes "Teaching Early Brass" by Crispian Steele-Perkins.
- Thiel, Anne-Marie. "Modi tutti da sonar il cornetto [The complete way to sound the cornetto]." *Tidig Musik: Magasinet för musik från medeltid, renässans och barock* 1/97, pp. 14-16.
The title is the heading of the cornett fingering chart from Aurelio Virgiliano's *Il dolcimelo* (ca. 1600).
- Tritle, Thomas. "Chamber Music for Clarinet and Horn." *The Horn Call* 28, no. 1 (November 1997): 23-36.
- Turner, Gary R. "Chromaticism and the Use of the Keyed Trumpet in the Haydn and the Hummel Trumpet Concerti." M.A. thesis, Indiana State University, 1997. OCLC 38491941.
- Turner, Kerry. "The Art of the Third Horn Player (the Unsung Hero)." *Brass Bulletin* no. 97 (1997): 46-54.
- Valeš, Vlasta. "Die Prager Militärmusikschule und ihre Bedeutung für das kulturelle Leben Prags in der 2. Hälfte des 19. Jahrhunderts [The Prague military music school and its significance for the cultural life of Prague in the second half of the 19th century]." In *Kongressbericht Mainz 1996*, ed. Eugen Brixel, pp. 105-28. *Alta Musica: Eine Publikation der Internationalen Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik*, 20. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1998.
- Verdié, Jean-Claude. "Introduction des instruments à vent à l'orchestre de l'Académie Imperiale de Musique: Castil-Blaze — 1855 [The introduction of wind instruments into the orchestra of the Académie Imperiale de Musique, as seen by Castil-Blaze in 1855]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 21 (April 1998): 12-16.
- Volkman, Rudy. "Build Your Own Cimbasso." *TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 24, no. 4 (Summer 1997): 52-54.

Wallace, John. "Brass Solo and Chamber Music from 1800." In Herbert and Wallace, ed., *Cambridge Companion to Brass Instruments*, pp. 236-54.

_____. "Thomas Rowlandson (1756-1827)." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 65-67, 69, 71; also cover.

Concerns erotic satirical drawings by the English artist Thomas Rowlandson (1756-1827) which depict musical themes such as "The Concert," "The Orchestra," and "The Juggler."

Weast, Robert D. *Famous Trumpet Players: Principles, Quotes and Commentary of [sic] Trumpet Players and Pedagogues from 1584 to the Present*. Johnston, IA: Brass World, 1998. OCLC 40001711.

Webb, John. "British Brass Makers." *Brass Bulletin* no. 101 (1998): 91-100.

_____. "The Cornophone as Wagner Tuba." *The Galpin Society Journal* 51 (1998): 193-94.

Wilkes, Nathan Garrison. *The 'Canzoni da sonar con ogni sorte d'istromenti' (1625) of Giovanni Picchi*. D.M.A. thesis, University of British Columbia, 1997.

v

Woodford, Paul G. "An Analysis of Antonín Dvorák's *Serenade in D Minor, Opus 44*." *Journal of Band Research* 34, no. 1 (Fall 1998): 38-58.

Zechmeister, Gerhard. "The Role of the (Contra)bass Trombone in the Vienna Sound." *Brass Bulletin* no. 102 (1998): 19-28; no. 103 (1998): 93-97.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

Bach: Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute Riemenschneider Bach Institute, Baldwin-Wallace College, Berea OH 44017.

Brass Bulletin P.O. Box 576, CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland; www.brass-bulletin.ch

The Brass Player New York Brass Conference for Scholarships, 315 W 53rd Street, New York NY 10019.

Civilization 575 Lexington Avenue, New York NY 10022; www.civmag.com

Clarino: Internationale Zeitschrift für Bläsermusik Druckerei Hans Obermeyer GmbH, Postfach 127, D-86801 Buchloe, Germany; www.blasmusik.de

Early Music America Early Music America, Inc., 11421- Bellflower Road, Cleveland OH 44106-3990.

FoMRHI Quarterly Barbara Stanley, Honorary Treasurer, 21 Broad Street, Clifton, Bedfordshire SG17 5RJ, UK.

Galpin Society Journal Alan Higgitt, Membership Secretary, 7 Perceval Avenue, London NW3 4PY, UK.

Händel-Jahrbuch Bärenreiter-Verlag Karl Vötterle GmbH & Co. KG, Heinrich-Schütz-Allee 35-37, D-34131 Kassel, Germany.

The Horn Call and *The Horn Call Annual* International Horn Society, Executive Secretary, Heidi Vogel, 8080 Thunder Street, Juneau AK 99801.

ITG Journal David C. Jones, ITG Treasurer, 241 East Main Street #247, Westfield MA 01086-1633.

Journal of Band Research Troy State University Press, Troy, AL 36082.

Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society Academic Services, PO Box 529, Canton MA 02021.

Journal of the Royal Musical Association Journals Subscription Department, Oxford University Press, Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK.

Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent 136, Boulevard de Magenta, F-75010, France.

Music Teacher Rhinegold Publishing, 241 Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8EH, UK.

The Musical Quarterly Oxford University Press, 2001 Evans Road, Cary NC 27513-2009; www.oup.co.uk/musqtl

NACWPI Journal Richard Weerts, Executive Secretary-Treasurer, Division of Fine Arts, Truman State University, Kirksville MO 63501.

Revista de musicología Sociedad Española de Musicología, Carretas, 14, 8.º — Desp. J-5, E-28012 Madrid, Spain.

Rivista italiana di musicologia Casa Editore Leo S. Olschki, Casella postale 66, I-50100 Firenze, Italy.

Structural Change and Economic Dynamics Elsevier Science, PO Box 945, New York NY 10159-0945

Studi musicali Casa Editore Leo S. Olschki, Casella postale 66, I-50100 Firenze, Italy.

Studien zur Musikwissenschaft Dr. Hans Schneider Verlag, Mozartstr. 6, D-82327 Tutzing, Germany.

Tidig Musik: Magasinet för musik från medeltid, renässans och barock Schönfeldts gränd 1, S-11126 Stockholm, Sweden; www.mh.luth.se/fftm

TUBA: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba Steven Bryant, TUBA Treasurer, School of Music, University of Texas at Austin, Austin TX 78172-1208.

WASBE Journal Druckerei Hans Obermeyer GmbH, Postfach 127, D-86801 Buchloe, Germany.

David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the Music Library at Indiana University. His most recent books are: (with Roger Prior) The Bassanos: Venetian Musicians and Instrument Makers in England, 1531-1665 (Aldershot, Hampshire: Scolar Press; Brookfield, VT: Ashgate Publishing, 1995) and (ed.) The Recorder in the Seventeenth Century: Proceedings of the International Recorder Symposium Utrecht 1993 (Utrecht: STIMU, 1996). He is working on a book-length bibliography of historic brass for Pendragon Press (Bucina: the Historic Brass Society Series).

A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1998-99

COMPILED BY DAVID LASOCKI

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between November 1998 and October 1999. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in Western European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Ahrens, Christian, and Gregor Klinke. *Musikinstrumentensammlung Hans und Hede Grumbt. 3. Blechblasinstrumente* [The musical instrument collection of Hans and Hede Grumbt. 3. Brass instruments]. Bochum: Ruhr-Universität Bochum, Musikwissenschaftliches Institut; Stadt Bochum; Museum Bochum, [late 1990s]. ISBN 3-8093-0207-4.

Alberola y Verdú, Josep Antoni. "Le cor à Valence de 1700 à 1750 = The Horn in Valencia, 1700-1750 = Das Horn in Valencia 1700-1750." *Brass Bulletin* 104 (1998): 30-42.

_____. "Révélations exclusives sur le cor naturel en Espagne: Valencia (II) 1750-1800 = The Natural Horn = Das Naturhorn." *Brass Bulletin* 105 (1999): 28-38.

Fits between the two articles by Bonet Manrique, cited below.

Albrecht, Theodore. "Elias (Eduard Constantin) Lewy and the First Performance of Beethoven's Ninth Symphony." *The Horn Call* 29, no. 3 (May 1999): 27-33, 85-94.

- Anzenberger, Friedrich. "Method Books for Valve Trumpet to 1850: An Annotated Bibliography." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 50-62.
- Bachmann-Geiser, Brigitte. "Die Instrumentensammlung des Bernischen Historischen Museums" [The instrument collection of the Bern Historical Museum]. *Musica instrumentalis* 1 (1998): 140-45.
- Bailey, H. Keith. *Cornets on the Copper Fields: a History of Brass Bands in the Copper Triangle*. [Adelaide, South Australia]: Kadina Wallaroo Moonta Band, 1998. OCLC 40500357.
- Banks, Jon. "Performing the Instrumental Music in the Segovia Codex." *Early Music* 27, no. 2 (May 1999): 294-309.
- Barclay, Robert. "A New Species of Instrument: The Vented Trumpet in Context." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 10 (1998): 1-13.
- Bonet Manrique, Javier. "Le cor à Madrid au XVIIIe siècle, 2e partie = The Horn in Madrid in the 18th Century, Part 2 = Das Horn in Madrid im 18. Jh., 2. Teil." *Brass Bulletin* 107 (1999): 50-60; to be continued.
- _____. "Cor classique, cor baroque, corno das tirarsi? Le monde de 1750 était évidemment très différent de celui dans lequel nous vivons aujourd'hui = Classical Horn, Baroque Horn or corno da tirarsi? The World in 1750 Was Of Course Very Different from That in Which We Live Today = Klassische Horn, Barockhorn, Corno da tirarsi? Die Welt von 1750 war natürlich sehr verschieden von unserer heutigen." *Brass Bulletin* no. 100 (1997): 20-30.
- _____. "Révélation exclusive sur le cor naturel en Espagne (Valence et Madrid) = Exclusive Revelations on the Natural Horn in Spain (Valencia and Madrid) = Exklusive Enthüllungen über das Naturhorn in Spanien (Valencia und Madrid)." *Brass Bulletin* no. 104 (1998): 30-42.
- Brixel, Eugen. "Die Trompetenschulen von Andreas Nemetz als Spiegel der Bläserausbildung und Bläserpraxis im frühen 19. Jahrhundert" [The trumpet methods of Andreas Nemetz as a reflection of the education and practice of wind playing in the early 19th century]. In *Eugen Brixel zum 60. Geburtstag*, 47-58. n.p.: n.p., 1999.
- Brodie, John Alexander. "The History of Music at the Virginia Military Institute from 1839 to the Present." D.M.A. thesis, Catholic University of America, 1997. OCLC 39902182, 40493959.

- Carter, Stewart. "Early Trombones in America's Shrine to Music Museum." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 10 (1998): 92-115.
- "Catalogue de la collection d'instruments de musique à vent, tome 3" [Catalog of Bruno Kampmann's collection of wind instruments, part 3]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* No. IX Spécial (September 1998).
- "Catalogue de vente de la manufacture générale d'instruments de musique Ferdinand & Ludovicus Decart, Lierre—Belgique" [Sales catalog of musical instrument manufacture, Ferdinand & Ludovicus Decart, Lierre, Belgium]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 22 (December 1998): 13-29.
- "Catalogue des instruments de musique de la manufacture générale de Gautrot Ainé & Cie à Paris, Rue Turenne, 80, Ancienne Rue Saint-Louis (au Marais), et à Château-Thierry (Aisne), 1867" [Catalog of musical instrument manufacture, Gautrot Ainé and Company, Paris....] *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, No. X Spécial (April 1999).
- Clark, David Lindsey. *Appraisals of Original Wind Music: a Survey and Guide*. Music Reference Collection, 77. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1999. OCLC 40395524.
- Cohen, Richard Scott. "The Musical Society Community Bands of Valencia, Spain: a Global Study of their Administration, Instrumentation, Repertoire and Performance Activities." D.M. thesis, Northwestern University, 1997. OCLC 39321688.
- Commettant, Oscar. "'La musique, les musiciens et les instruments de musique chez les différents peuples du monde': Oscar Commettant, Paris, 1869." ["The music, the musicians, and the musical instruments among all the world's people': Oscar Commettant, Paris, 1869]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 22 (December 1998): 9-13.
An excerpt from Commettant's review of the Exposition Internationale, Paris, 1867, and particularly the role played in it by Adolphe Sax.
- Corti, Guido. *Il corno* [The horn]. *L'espressione della musica*, 1. Varese: Zecchini, 1998. OCLC 40624610.
- Cowl, Carl, and Sheila M. Craik. *Henry George Farmer: A Bibliography*. Glasgow: Glasgow University Library, 1999.
Includes essays "Henry George Farmer: A Bibliographical Note" by Sheila M. Craik (pp. VI-XVI), and "Farmer's Contribution to the Study of Military Music" by Trevor Herbert (pp. XVII-XXI).

- D'Accone, Frank A. *The Civic Muse: Music and Musicians in Siena during the Middle Ages and the Renaissance*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1997.
- Dewald, Brian L. "The Waits of England." *Journal of Band Research* 34, no. 2 (Spring 1999): 51-62.
- Downey, Peter. "'If Music Comes from Many Horns, Then the Sound is Sweeter': Trumpets and Horns in Early Medieval Ireland." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 130-74.
- "Dr. Eugen Brixel: Tätigkeiten im Dienste der Blasmusik" [Dr. Eugen Brixel: Activities in the service of wind music]. In *Eugen Brixel zum 60. Geburtstag*, 11-14. n.p.: n.p., 1999.
- Duffin, Ross W. "Backward Bells and Barrel Bells: Some Notes on the Early History of Loud Instruments." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 113-29.
- Dundas, Richard J. *Twentieth Century Brass Musical Instruments in the United States*. 2nd ed. Rutland, VT: author, 1998. Distributed by Bryant Altman, Inc., Endicott Street, Building #26, Norwood MA 02062. OCLC 41419658.
Actually a catalog of brass makers. Includes a short introduction on the history of brass instruments and much historical information on the makers.
- DuPree, Mary. "Early Bands in an Idaho Railroad Town: Pocatello, 1887-1930." In *Vistas of American Music: Essays and Compositions in Honor of William K. Kearns*, ed. Susan L. Porter and John Graziano, 251-66. Warren, MI: Harmonie Park Press, 1999. OCLC 40723812.
- Eichborn, Hermann. "Girolamo Fantini, ein Virtuos des siebzehnten Jahrhunderts und seine Trompeten-Schule" [Girolamo Fantini, a virtuoso of the seventeenth century, and his trumpet method]. *Monatshefte für Musikgeschichte* 22 (1890): 112-38. Facsimile with preface by Edward H. Tarr. *Kölner Musikbeiträge*, 6. Köln: Haas, 1998. OCLC 38980717.
- Eichborn, Hermann Ludwig. *Das alte Clarinblasen auf Trompeten* [Early clarino playing on trumpets]. Leipzig: Breitkopf & Härtel, 1894. Facsimile with preface by Edward H. Tarr. *Kölner Musikbeiträge*, 7. Köln: Haas, 1998. OCLC 38980744.
- Ekstrand, Jacqueline Grace. "'Concertino pour le cor chromatique' (1857) by Johann Christoph Schuncke (1791-1857): a Performance Edition." D.M.A. thesis, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 1998. OCLC 40272008, 40271963.
- Engelke, Luis C. "The Trumpet Works of Johann Melchior Molter." *NACWPI Journal* 47, no. 2 (Winter 1998-1999): 4-9.

Ericson, John Q. "Heinrich Staelzel and Early Valved Horn Technique." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 63-82.

_____. "Trashing the Valved Horn? Comments on Valved and Natural Horns from Turn-of-the-Century England." *The Horn Call* 29, no. 1 (November 1988): 53-56.

_____. "Why was the Valve Invented?" *The Horn Call* 28, no. 3 (May 1998): 35-40.

Florea, Anca. "Wind and Percussion Instruments in Romanian Mural Painting." *RIDIM Newsletter* 22, no. 1 (Spring 1997): 23-30.

Garrett, Joshua. "Brahms' Horn Trio: Background and Analysis for Performers." D.M.A. thesis, The Juilliard School, 1998. OCLC 39267196.

George, Tony. "Ophicleide." *T.U.B.A.: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba* 24, no. 4 (Summer 1997): 36-37.

Gillaspie, Jon A., Marshall Stoneham, and David Lindsey Clark. *The Wind Ensemble Catalog*. Music Reference Collection, 63. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1998. OCLC 37843753.

Güersching, Albrecht. "Die Entstehung des Bläserquintetts: eine doppelte Geschichte...." [The origins of the wind quintet: a double history....] *Tibia* 22, no. 1 (1997): 353-59.

Habla, Bernhard. "Opern-Bearbeitungen für Harmoniemusiken und größere Bläserbesetzungen: gedrucktes Notenmaterial aus dem zweiten Viertel des 19. Jh." [Opera transcriptions for wind band and larger ensemble arrangements: Printed scores from the second quarter of the 19th century]. *Studia musicologica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 38, no. 1-2 (1997): 53-64.

Hachenberg, Karl F. "The Complaint of the Markneukirchen Brass-Instrument Makers about the Poor Quality of Brass from the Rodewisch Foundry, 1787-1795." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 10 (1998): 116-45.

Hageman, Paul Martin. "Trombone Excerpts from the Concert Band Repertory." D.A. thesis, University of Northern Colorado, 1998. OCLC 42369884.

Hammond, L. Curtis. "Of Needles and Haystacks." *The Horn Call* 29, no. 1 (November 1998): 69-74; 29, no. 2 (February 1999): 55-62.

Excerpts from his thesis, "Horn Source Materials: An Annotated Bibliography of Selected Doctoral Theses and Dissertations from the United States (1932-1990)," Florida State University, 1997.

Hatch, Christopher. "The Wondrous Trumpet Call in Beethoven's *Fidelio*." *The Opera Quarterly* 15, no. 1 (Winter 1999): 5-17.

Haynes, Bruce. "Comments on Matthew Cron's Article 'In Defense of Altenburg: The Pitch and Form of Foreign Trumpets,' *HBSJ* 8 (1996)." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 206-10.

See also Steele-Perkins, below.

Herbert, Trevor. "The Practice and Context of a Private Victorian Brass Band." In *Nineteenth-century British Music Studies*, 1, ed. Bennett Zon, 105-18. Aldershot: Ashgate: 1999. OCLC 40460125.

_____, and Jeffrey Nussbaum. "Public Defender Number One for the Serpent: An Interview with Douglas Yeo." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 12 (Summer 1999): 13-17.

Johns, Michael P. "Collauf and his Contribution to Moravian Music." D.M.A. thesis, Temple University, 1996. OCLC 36514053.

Collauf (first name unknown) worked in Nazareth, Pennsylvania, around 1800. Five quintets of his for two clarinets, two horns, and bassoon have survived.

Kampmann, Bruno. "Le sarrusophone dans l'orchestre symphonique" [The sarrusophone in the symphony orchestra]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 23 (April 1999): 13.

Karjalainen, Kauko. "The Brass Band Tradition in Finland." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 83-96.

Keim, Friedel. *Das Trompeter-Taschenbuch: Wissenswertes rund um die Trompete* [The trumpet notebook: things worth knowing about the trumpet]. Atlantis-Musikbuchverlag, Serie Musik, Atlantis-Schott, Band 8377. Mainz: Schott Musik International, 1999. OCLC 41301269.

Includes information on modern trumpeters of all persuasions.

Kinder, Keith William. *The Wind and Wind-chorus Music of Anton Bruckner*. Contributions to the Study of Music and Dance, 51. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1999. OCLC 39024849.

Kreitner, Kenneth. "Jacob Guth in Montrose: a Town Band in Central Pennsylvania, 1888-1897." In *Music and Culture in America, 1861-1918*, ed. Michael Saffle, 231-69. Essays in American Music, 2; Garland Reference Library of the Humanities, 1952. New York: Garland, 1998. OCLC 37975562.

- Krivokapic, Igor. "La musique de cuivres en Slovénie: Compte-rendu, 1re partie = Brass Music in Slovenia, Part 1 = Blechblasmusik in Slowenien: Historischer Rückblick, 1. Teil." *Brass Bulletin* 105 (1998): 50-58; 107 (1999): 96-105; to be continued.
- Lane, G.B. *The Trombone: An Annotated Bibliography*. Lanham, MD & London: The Scarecrow Press, 1999. OCLC 39281982.
- Lapie, Raymond. "Le trombone d'après les traités d'orchestration (France, 1700-1914) = The Trombone According to Orchestration Treatises (France, 1700-1914) = Die Posaune im Spiegel der Orchestrationslehrwerke (Frankreich, 1700-1914)." *Brass Bulletin* 105 (1998): 122-29; 107 (1999): 84-93.
- Larkin, Chris. "Twenty-eight Duets for Two Horns by Carl Haudek Discovered in England." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 108-12.
- Leonard, Charlotte A. "The Role of the Trombone and its *Affekt* in the Lutheran Church Music of Seventeenth-Century Saxony and Thuringia: The Early Seventeenth Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 10 (1998): 57-91.
- _____. "Selected Discography of 17th-Century Sacred Music for Trombones and Voices." *ITA Journal* 27, no. 2 (Spring 1999): 22-25.
- Lévachkine, Alexei. "Le tuba en Russie — bref historique, Première partie = A Short History of the Tuba in Russia, Part 1 = Die Tuba in Russland—historischer Abriss, Erster Teil." *Brass Bulletin* 107 (1999): 18-25.
- Lindner, Andreas. *Die kaiserlichen Hoftrompeter und Hofpauker im 18. und 19. Jahrhundert* [The (Austrian) imperial court trumpeters and timpani players in the 18th and 19th centuries]. Wiener Veröffentlichungen zur Musikwissenschaft, 36. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1999. OCLC 42211927.
- "Manufacture d'instruments de musique de l'Association Générale des Ouvriers—J. Maître, Fonclause & Cie, 1898" [Musical instrument manufacture of the Association Générale des Ouvriers—J. Maître, Fonclause and Company, 1898]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 23 (April 1999): 15-34.
- Mathez, Jean-Pierre. "Angelo Walter Galletti: un corniste collectionneur = Hornist and Collector = Hornist und Sammler." *Brass Bulletin* no. 98 (1997): 58-69.
- _____. "Le Conservatoire de Milan 1808-1999 = The Milan Conservatory (1808-1999) = Das Mailänder Konservatorium (1808-1999)." *Brass Bulletin* 106 (1999): 54-71.

- _____. "Reinhold Friedrich, dompteur de trompette = Tamer of the Trumpet = Trompeten-Dompteur." *Brass Bulletin* 105 (1999): 82-99.
- McGowan, Keith. "The Prince and the Piper: *haut, bas* and the Whole Body in Early Modern Europe." *Early Music* 27, no. 2 (May 1999): 211-32.
- Meier, Edwin. "Das Trompetenmuseum in Bad Säckingen" [The Trumpet Museum in Bad Säckingen]. *Intrada* 2, no. 2 (1996): 40-42.
- Melton, William. "Franz Strauss: A Hero's Life." *The Horn Call* 29, no. 2 (February 1999): 21-26, 103-11.
- Miller, Henry Joseph. "Performance Practices of the Cornet Solos of Herbert L. Clarke (1867-1945)." M.M. thesis, California State University, Long Beach, 1998. OCLC 41520296.
- Muenter, Karl, with Bob Goodman. "German Fanfarenzuege in Former Times and Now." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 12 (Summer 1999): 33-34.
- "Musical Patents of the Past, no. 1: Tremolo for Trumpets." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 21 (April 1998): 17.
- A transcript of a patent taken out by Charles Meister of Philadelphia on 7 February 1888 for an improved cornet mouthpiece that included a special valve to aid the production of double- and triple-tonguing as well as tremolos.
- Myers, Arnold. "Characterization and Taxonomy of Historic Brass Musical Instruments from an Acoustical Standpoint." Ph.D. dissertation, University of Edinburgh, 1998.
- Nussbaum, Jeffrey. "Cornetto and Serpent Makers Worldwide." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 12 (Summer 1999): 10-12.
- _____. *History, Development and Technology of Brass Instruments*. Diploma Course in Music Teaching in Private Practice, Module 3: Brass Teaching and Learning; Unit B3a. Reading: International Centre for Research in Music Education, School of Education, University of Reading, 1999.
- Orosz, Josef A., Jr. *A Report on This Most Famous Civil War Bugle Call Honoring the last One Hundred Thirty Six Years, 1862-1998*. [Bedford, PA: author], 1998. OCLC 39823624.
- Page, Janet K. "Brass and Percussion Instruments and Players in Vienna, 1740-1760, according to the *Wienerisches Diarium*." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 10 (1998): 21-56.

- Parks, Raymond. *Edinburgh University Collection of Historic Musical Instruments: Portfolio of Drawings of Mouthpieces for Brass Instruments*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Collection of Historic Musical Instruments, 1999.
- Peters, Grant Shields. "The Trumpet as a Musical and Dramatic Element in Selected Operas of Gioachino [*sic*] Rossini and Giuseppe Verdi: its Employment in On-stage and Off-stage Instrumental Ensembles; a Lecture Recital, together with Three Recitals of Selected Works of J.G.B. Neruda, P. Hindemith, G. Antheil and Others." D.M.A. thesis, University of North Texas, 1998. OCLC 41319983.
- Plunkett, Paul. "Clarinblasen, eine vergessene Kunst" [Clarino playing: a forgotten art]. *Intrada* 2, no. 2 (1996): 32-39.
- Pursell, John Owen. "Italian Music for Trumpet in the Seventeenth Century with Emphasis on the Works of Alessandro Scarlatti." D.M.A. thesis, University of Maryland-College Park, 1998.
- Rabbai, George. *Infantry Bugle Calls of the American Civil War*. Pacific, MO: Mel Bay Publications, 1998. OCLC 40657351.
- Rice, Suzanne S. "An Annotated Bibliography of Horn Duets with a View to Pedagogical Applications." M.A. thesis, Ball State University, 1998. OCLC 40928659.
- Ridley, E.A.K. *Royal College of Music Museum of Instruments. Catalogue Part 1a: European Wind Instruments: Addenda*. Ed. Elizabeth Wells. London: Royal College of Music, 1998.
- Robinson, Margaret Ann. "The History, Use, and Influence of *cor mixte*." D.M.A. thesis, University of Cincinnati, 1998. OCLC 40664298.
- Roche-Wallace, Catherine. "The Six Solo Horn Concerti from the 'Blütezeit' of the Oettingen-Wallerstein 'Hofkapelle.'" D.M.A. thesis, University of Memphis, 1997.
- Ryder, Donald Dean. "The March Compositions of the Goldman Library." D.M.A. thesis, University of Iowa, 1999. OCLC 41966491.
- Sluchin, Benny, and Raymond Lapie. "Slide Trombone Teaching and Method Books in France (1794-1960)." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 4-29.
- Smith, Susan. "Early Brass on the Map: An Interview with Robert King, Paul McCreesh and Andrew Parrott." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 12 (Summer 1999): 3-9.

- Smithers, Don L. "The Emperor's New Clothes Reappraised: Or Bach's Musical Resources Revealed." *Bach: The Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute* 28, no. 1-2 (Spring-Summer 1997/Fall-Winter 1997): 1-81.
Includes remarks on Bach's trumpeters.
- Snedeker, Jeffrey L., trans. "Method for High-Horn and Low-Horn by Louis-François Dauprat [6th installment]." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 30-49.
- Steele-Perkins, Crispian. "Cron Put His Finger (or a Foot!) on an Important Point." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 211-13.
A response to Matthew Cron in *HBSJ* 8; see also Haynes, above.
- Stewart, Andrew. "No Longer Just One Cornetto." *Early Music Today* 5, no. 5 (1997): 4-5.
On the development of modern cornett and sackbut technique.
- Stradner, Gerhard. "Horns and Trumpet in a Treatise by Friedrich Ponsing." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 10 (1998): 14-20.
- Tarr, Edward H. *The Art of Baroque Trumpet Playing: Exercises from the Schola Cantorum Basiliensis = Die Kunst der Barocktrompetenspiels: Übungen aus der Schola Cantorum Basiliensis; v. 1. Basic Exercises*. Mainz: Schott, 1999. OCLC 41711757.
- Towne, Gary. "Tubatori e piffari: Civic Wind Players in Medieval and Renaissance Bergamo." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 9 (1997): 175-95.
- Verdié, Jean Claude, and Pierre Antoine. "Facteurs et marchands d'instruments de musique à vent de Toulouse (France—Haute Garonne), 1800-1914" [Makers and sellers of wind instruments in Toulouse, 1800-1914]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* 23 (April 1999): 3-12.
- Wampler, Stephen George. "A Brass Players' Guide to the Transcription and Performance of J.S. Bach's 'Six Suites for Violoncello Solo.'" D.M.A. thesis, University of Washington, 1998. OCLC 40938734.
- Weimer, Lee J. "The Trumpet as a Solo Instrument in New York City from 1835 to 1845." D.M.A. thesis, University of Memphis, 1998.
- Weller, Enrico. "Gesellschaften und Innungen der Blasinstrumentenmacher in Vogtland" [Associations and guilds of wind instrument makers in Vogtland]. *Musica instrumentalis* 1 (1998): 106-19.

Zara, Alessandro. "An Interview with Hornist Raul Diaz." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 12 (Summer 1999): 18-22.

Correction:

Michelle Koth, Yale University, has kindly informed us that the following item, cited in a previous bibliography, does not refer to the musical instrument but to speakers (horns) used to blast emergency signals, etc.:

Underwood, Ronald Lynn. *Re-examination of Acoustic Horn Theory by the Boundary Element Method and by Experiment*. Ph.D. dissertation, North Carolina State University, 1996.

Where to obtain sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

BACH: The Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute Baldwin-Wallace College, Berea OH 44017-2088.

Brass Bulletin P.O. Box, CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland.

Early Music Journals Marketing Department, Oxford University Press, Covent Clarendon Street, Oxford OX26DP, UK. In the United States: Oxford University Press, Subscriptions Department, 2001 Evans Road, Cary NC 27513.

The Horn Call Heidi Vogel, Executive Secretary, International Horn Society, 8180 Thunder Street, Juneau AK 99801.

ITA Journal Vern Kagarice, Editor, Box 305338, Denton TX 76203.

Journal of Band Research Troy State University Press, Troy AL 36082.

Journal of the International Trumpet Guild David C. Jones, ITG Treasurer, 241 East Main Street #247, Westfield MA 01086-1633.

Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent 136, Boulevard de Magenta, F-75018 Paris, France.

Musica instrumentalis Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Postfach 11 95 80, D-90105 Nürnberg, Germany.

NACWPI Journal Richard Weerts, Executive Secretary-Treasurer, Division of Fine Arts, Truman State University, Kirksville MO 63501.

The Opera Quarterly Journals Marketing Department, Oxford University Press, Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK. In the United States: Oxford University Press, Journals Subscriptions Department, 2001 Evans Road, Cary NC 27513.

RIDIM Newsletter. Research Center for Music Iconography CUNY, 33 West 42nd Street, New York NY 10036.

Studia musicologica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae Akadémiai Kiadó, P.O.B. 245, H-1519 Budapest, Hungary.

Tibia Moeck Verlag, Postfach 31 31, D-29231 Celle, Germany.

T.U.B.A.: Journal for Euphonium and Tuba Steven Bryant, TUBA Treasurer, School of Music, University of Texas at Austin, Austin TX 78172-1208.

David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. His most recent books are: A Biographical Dictionary of English Court Musicians, 1485–1714, compiled by Andrew Ashbee and David Lasocki assisted by Peter Holman and Fiona Kisby, 2 vols. (Aldershot, Hampshire and Brookfield, VT: Ashgate, 1998); and (ed.) A Time of Questioning: Proceedings of the International Double-Reed Symposium Utrecht 1994 (Utrecht: STIMU, 1999). He is preparing a book-length bibliography of historic brass for Pendragon Press (Bucina: the Historic Brass Society Series).

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 1999–2000

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertory and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between November 1999 and October 2000. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Allsen, J. Michael. "The Saint Thomas Sonata Reconsidered." *ITA Journal* 28, no. 2 (Spring 2000): 14–17.

Concerns the anonymous seventeenth-century *Sonata Trombone Solo* preserved in Brno (formerly in the library of the St. Thomas Church of the Augustinian Monastery). See also under Ken Shifrin.

Anesa, Marino. *Dizionario della musica italiana per banda e gruppi di fiati: Biografie dei compositori e catalogo delle opere dal 1800 ad oggi. Vol. II* [Dictionary of Italian music for band and wind ensemble: biographies of the composers and catalog of works from 1800 to the present. Vol. 2]. Gazzaniga, Italy: author, 1997. OCLC 30049322, 36885068, 37657744.

The first volume was published in 1993.

Atwell, Bruce William. "History of the Natural Horn Quartet in Selected Works from the Symphonic Literature, Chamber Music, and Opera: From the Baroque to the Romantic Period." D.M.A. diss., University of Cincinnati, 1999. OCLC 43064418.

Bär, Frank P. "Museum oder Wunderkammer? Die Musikinstrumentensammlung Manfredo

Settala im Mailand des 17. Jahrhunderts" [Museum or cabinet of curiosities? The musical instrument collection of Manfredo Settala in Milan in the seventeenth century]. In *Für Aug' und Obr: Musik in Kunst- und Wunderkammern*, ed. Wilfried Seipel, pp. 59–72. Vienna: Kunsthistorisches Museum, 1999.

Banks, Margaret Downie. "Brass Instruments from the Utley Collection Fill Museum's Horn of Plenty this Harvest Season." *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* 26, no. 4 (November 1999): 4–5, 7–8.

_____. "For Sale: Emerson's Courtois Cornet — Will Trade for a Horse." *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* 25, no. 3 (May 1998): 4–5.

_____. "Museum Acquires Missing Link: Cornet Built by Busch for Jules Levy, 'King of Cornetists.'" *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* 27, no. 2 (May 2000): 1–2.

Barboteu, Georges. "The Evolution of the Horn in France and its School." *The Horn Call* 30, no. 4 (August 2000): 33–38.

Reprinted from 6, no. 2 (May 1976): 23–40 (originally in both French and English).

Bermúdez, Egberto. "The *ministriles* Tradition in Latin America: Part One. South America. 1. The Cases of Santafé (Colombia) and La Plata (Bolivia) in the Seventeenth Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 149–62.

Bevan, Clifford. "Final Thoughts on the Cimbasso, Part 1." *TUBA Journal* 26, no. 3 (Spring 1999): 56–57.

_____. "The Serpent: Early Music's Most Teased Instrument." *Early Music Today* 7 (February-March 1999), 9–11.

Blažeković, Zdravko. "What Marsyas may have meant to the Cinquecento Venetians, or, Andrea Schiavone's Symbolism of Musical Instruments." In *Glazba, riječ i slike: svec'ani zbornik za Koraljku Kos = Music, Words, and Images: Essays in Honour of Koraljka Kos*, ed. Vjera Katalinić and Zdravko Blažeković, 93–116. Muzikolos'ki zbornici, 6. Zagreb: Hrvatsko muzikolos'ko drus'tvo [Croatian Musicological Society], 1999. OCLC 44114728.

Bonet Manrique, Javier. "Le cor à Madrid au XVIIIe siècle, 3e partie = The Horn in Madrid in the 18th Century, Part 3 = Das Horn in Madrid im 18. Jh., 3. Teil." *Brass Bulletin* no. 108 (1999): 14–21.

The first two parts appeared in *Brass Bulletin* no. 100 (1997): 20–30 and 107 (1999): 50–60.

Brandt, Thompson, and D. Jerome Tweton. *John Philip Sousa in North Dakota, 1896-1928*. [Bismarck, ND]: North Dakota Humanities Council, 2000. OCLC 43852909.

Brass Anthology: a Collection of Brass Articles published in The Instrumentalist Magazine from 1946 to 1999. 10th ed. Anthology Series, 3. Northfield, IL: Instrumentalist Pub. Co., 1999. OCLC 42330615.

Burrows, Donald. "Of Handel, London Trumpeters, and Trumpet Music." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 1-9.

"Catalogue de vente de la firme August Reichel, Jr." [A catalogue of wind instruments from the firm of August Reichel, Jr.]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 24 (December 1999): 16-28.

Clark, David Lindsey. *Appraisals of Original Wind Music: a Survey and Guide*. Music Reference Collection, no. 77. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1999. OCLC 40395524.

An extensive guide to the wind repertoire, with evaluations largely taken from reviews. Includes sections on horn, trumpet, tenor trombone, tuba and bass trombone, brass ensemble, mixed wind instruments with accompaniment, mixed wind and strings with accompaniment, mixed wind alone, mixed wind with strings, multiple concertos, vocal music with wind ensemble, and cornets and sackbuts.

"Contexts for Brass: History, Performance, Culture." In *Musicology and Sister Disciplines: Past, Present, Future: Proceedings of the 16th International Congress of the International Musicological Society, London, 1997*, ed. David Greer with Ian Rumbold and Jonathan King, 565-68. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000. OCLC 43790431, 44183854.

A summary of a "study session" involving Stewart Carter, Trevor Herbert, Jeffrey Nussbaum, Richard Middleton, Keith Polk, and Rob Wegman.

Cools, Jacques. "L'embouchure des 'cuivres' en France et en Belgique: XIX-XXème [siècles]" [The mouthpiece of brass instruments in France and Belgium: nineteenth-twentieth centuries]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 24 (December 1999): 29-33.

Corry, Mary Jane. "Brass Instruments in Colonial America: The Newspaper Sources." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 175-80.

Dearling, Robert. *Woodwind & Brass Instruments*. Philadelphia, PA: Chelsea House Publishers, 2000. Originally published: London: Carlton Books, 1999. OCLC 44883668.

Dennis, Pamela R. "Music in Jackson, Tennessee: 1875-1917." Ph.D. diss., University of Memphis, 2000. OCLC 44489546.

Includes some material on bands.

Ellis, Katharine. "The Fair Sax: Women, Brass-Playing and the Instrument Trade in 1860s Paris." *Journal of the Royal Musical Association* 124, no. 2 (1999): 221–54.

Ericson, John Q. "Crooks and the 19th-Century Horn." *The Horn Call* 30, no. 1 (November 1999): 49–58.

Für Aug' und Obr: Musik in Kunst- und Wunderkammern [For eye and ear: music in cabinets of curiosities]. Ed. Wilfried Seipel. Vienna: Kunsthistorisches Museum, 1999. OCLC 43308708.

Includes a catalog of an exhibition at the Kunsthistorisches Museum, Schloß Ambras, Austria, 7 July–31 October 1999, including several historic brass instruments. See entries under Bär, Gétreau, and Meucci and Stradner.

Gétreau, Florence. "Musikinstrumente in allegorischen Darstellungen des 17. Jahrhunderts" [Musical instruments in allegorical depictions in the seventeenth century]. In *Für Aug' und Obr: Musik in Kunst- und Wunderkammern*, ed. Wilfried Seipel, pp. 21–30. Vienna: Kunsthistorisches Museum, 1999.

Guion, David M. "On the Trail of the Medieval Slide Trumpet = Sur les traces de la trompette à coulisse médiévale = Auf den Spuren der mittelalterlichen Zugtrompete." *Brass Bulletin* no. 109 (2000): 90–97; no. 110 (2000): 46–54.

Harris, Kristine Lynn. "A Collection of Cadenzas for the Trumpet Concertos of Franz Joseph Haydn and Johann Nepomuk Hummel." D.A. diss., Ball State University, 1999. OCLC 43705162.

Herbert, Trevor. "Volunteers, Salvationists and Committees: Consensus versus Regulation in Amateur Victorian Brass Bands." In *La musique populaire des Îles Britanniques, 1835–1915*, ed. Claude Chastagner, pp. 105–21. Cahiers victoriens et édouardiens, 50. Montpellier: Centre d'études et de recherches victoriennes et édouardiennes de l'Université Paul-Valéry, 1999. OCLC 43506534.

_____, ed. *The British Brass Band: a Musical and Social History*. Oxford: Clarendon Press; New York: Oxford University Press, 2000. OCLC 42798200, 43032439.

Revised and enlarged edition of *Bands: the Brass Band Movement in the 19th and 20th Centuries* (Milton Keynes & Philadelphia: Open University Press, 1991).

Heyde, Herbert. "The Brass Instrument Collection of the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 113–47.

Howe, Warren P. "Early American Military Music." *American Music* 17, no. 1 (Spring 1999): 87–116.

Humphries, John. *The Early Horn: a Practical Guide*. Cambridge Handbooks to the Historical Performance of Music. Cambridge & New York: Cambridge University Press, 2000. OCLC 42726155, 43418390.

Impett, Jonathan. "The Identification and Transposition of Authentic Instruments: Musical Practice and Technology." *Leonardo Music Journal* 8 (1998): 21–26.

"Explores the idea of authenticity in musical practice as a function of its situatedness in technology. Two recent developments of the trumpet are discussed — the reinvention of the baroque trumpet and the use of a computer-extended trumpet (the meta-trumpet) — to highlight issues of historical, personal, and cultural authenticity."

Janetzky, Kurt. "Metamorphoses of Possibilities." *The Horn Call* 30, no. 4 (August 2000): 73–75.

Reprinted from 2, no. 2 (May 1972): 76–86. Concerns the evolution of horn technique.

Jeltsch, Jean, and Denis Watel. "Maîtrises et jurandes dans la communauté des maîtres faiseurs d'instruments de musique à Paris" [Tests and mastery in the community of Parisian master instrument makers]. *Musique, images, instruments: Revue française d'organologie et d'iconographie musicale* 4 (1999): 8–31.

Includes material on the brass-instrument monopoly.

Jones, William Lalverse, Jr. "The Brass Quintet: an Historical and Stylistic Survey." D.M.A. diss., University of Kentucky, 1998. OCLC 40544529, 44009474.

Kampmann, Bruno. "Le trombone à pavillon avant ou arrière" [The trombone with bell forward or backward]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 24 (December 1999): 4–10; no. 25 (March 2000): 30–31.

Kearns, Andrew. "Mozart's Concerto for Second Horn: K. 370b and 371." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 69–92.

Kehle, Robert. *Alto Trombone Literature: an Annotated Guide*. Warwick, England: Warwick Music, 2000. OCLC 44773198, 45005978.

Kimball, Will. "The Rise and Fall ... and Rise of the Alto Trombone." *NACWPI Journal* 48, no. 3 (Spring 2000): 23–28.

Kinder, Keith William. *The Wind and Wind-Chorus Music of Anton Bruckner*. Contributions to the Study of Music and Dance, 51. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 2000. OCLC 39024849.

Knighton, Tess, and Carmen Morte García. "Ferdinand of Aragon's Entry into Valladolid in 1513: The Triumph of a Christian King." *Early Music History* 18 (1999): 119–63.

The effect of the entry relied on wind music.

Kollias, Jim. "The Anaheim Band, 1897–1899." *Journal of Band Research* 35, no. 1 (Fall 1999): 13–35.

Lapie, Raymond. "A Sensational Discovery = Une découverte sensationnelle = Eine sensationelle Entdeckung." *Brass Bulletin* no. 109 (2000): 32–43; no. 110 (2000): 58–71.

Describes the rediscovery of twelve brass quintets composed by Jean Bellon around 1850.

Larson, Andre P. "One of the Great Collections: Joe & Joella Utley Donate more than 500 Rare Brass Instruments." *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* vol. 26, no. 4 (November 1999): 1–3.

Lévachkine, Alexei. "Le tuba en Russie — bref historique, 2e partie = A Short History of the Tuba in Russia, Part 2 = Die Tuba in Russland — historischer Abriss, 2. Teil." *Brass Bulletin* no. 108 (1999): 58–66.

Part 1 appeared in *Brass Bulletin* 107 (1999): 18–25.

Madeuf, Pierre-Yves, Jean-François Madeuf, and Graham Nicholson. "The Guitbert Trumpet: A Remarkable Discovery." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 181–86.

On a French trumpet dated 1422.

McGrattan, Alexander. "The Trumpet in Scotland from 1488 to 1800." Ph.D. diss., Open University, 1999. OCLC 44821245.

Meucci, Renato. "On 'Organology': A Position Paper." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): viii–x.

Uses some brass examples.

_____, and Gerhard Stradner. "Musikinstrumente der Renaissance in den Aufzeichnungen von Giovanni Filoteo Achillini, Bologna, um 1510" [Musical instruments of the Renaissance in the sketches of Giovanni Filoteo Achillini, Bologna, ca. 1510]. In *Für Aug' und Obr: Musik in Kunst- und Wunderkammern*, ed. Wilfried Seipel, pp. 45–58. Vienna: Kunsthistorisches Museum, 1999.

Nelson, David. "Heightened Rhythmic Activity in a 'Monothematic' Exposition by Mozart — the First Movement of *Serenade*, K. 361/370A." *Journal of Band Research* 35, no. 2 (Spring 2000): 47–74.

Nussbaum, Jeffrey. "Pioneers in Early Brass: A Conversation with Ronald Anderson, Martha Bixler, Allan Dean, Arnold Fromme, and Robert Montesi." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 13 (Summer 2000): 3–9.

Paul, Ernst. "Hunting Music in Austria." *The Horn Call* 30, no. 4 (August 2000): 53–56.
Reprinted from 2, no. 1 (November 1971): 30–39.

Poster, Jack Howard. "The Brass Band." D.M.A. diss., Claremont Graduate University, 2000. OCLC 44579312.

Pussiau, Vincent. "Jean-Baptiste (II) and (III) Tabard, deux facteurs d'instruments de musique à vent lyonnais de bois, de cuivre et de vent" [Jean-Baptiste (II) and (III) Tabard: two Lyonnaise makers of woodwind and brass instruments]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 25 (March 2000): 3–25.

Biographical research by Pussiau; descriptions of instruments in the Boch et Pick Collection apparently by Bernard Boch and Richard Pick.

Radulescu, Speranta. "The Peasant Brass Band in Romania." *East European Meetings in Ethnomusicology* 6 (1999): 61–68.

Rasch, Rudy. "Some Remarks on Vivaldi's Amsterdam Concerto." *Informazioni e studi vivaldiani* 19 (1998): 33–43.

Concerns RV562a for solo violin, 2 oboes, 2 horns, timpani, and strings.

Rider, Susan. "The Use and Development of the Trumpet through the Orchestral Works of Mendelssohn, Schumann, and Brahms." D.M. document, Indiana University, 2000.

Salmen, Walter. "Das Alphorn in Texten und auf Bildern des 18. Jahrhunderts" [The alphorn in texts and pictures of the eighteenth century]. In *Glazba, riježi i slike: svečani zbornik za Koraljku Kos = Music, Words, and Images: Essays in Honour of Koraljka Kos*, ed. Vjera Katalinić and Zdravko Blažeković, pp. 117–26. Muzikološki zbornici, 6. Zagreb: Hrvatsko muzikološko društvo [Croatian Musicological Society], 1999. OCLC 44114728.

Schöck, Ralf F. *Solo-Posaune und Blesorchester: Verzeichnis von über 750 Solowerken für eine oder mehrere Posaunen und Blesorchester* [Solo trombone and wind orchestra: catalog of over 750 solo works for one or more trombones and wind orchestra]. *Werke für Soloinstrumente und Blesorchester*, ed. Bernhard Habla, Bd. 7. Wien: Musikverlag Johann Kliment, 1999. OCLC 430353786.

Shaffer, Timothy Allen. "Selected Excerpts for the Trumpet and Cornet from the Opera Repertory: A Guide for Preparation and Performance." D.M.A. diss., University of Texas at Austin, 1999.

Shifrin, Ken. "The Saint Thomas Sonata." *ITA Journal* 27, no. 4 (Fall 1999): 30.

Concerns the anonymous seventeenth-century *Sonata Trombone Solo* preserved in Brno (formerly in the library of the St. Thomas Church of the Augustinian Monastery). See also under J. Michael Allsen.

_____. "The Valve Trombone in the Nineteenth Century Orchestras of France, Germany, Austria and Bohemia, with Special Focus on the Trombone Works of Dvořák = Le trombone à pistons au XIXe siècle dans les orchestres de France, d'Allemagne, d'Autriche et de Bohême, et plus particulièrement dans l'oeuvre de Dvořák = Die Ventilposaune im 19. Jahrhundert in den französischen, deutschen, österreichischen und böhmischen Orchestern, vor allem in Dvořák's Werk." *Brass Bulletin* no. 111 (2000): 126–144; to be continued.

Snell, Keith Oren. "A Modern Method for the English Post Horn and Coach Horn." M.M. thesis, California State University, Long Beach, 1999. OCLC 43469578.

Steele-Perkins, Crispian. "The Trumpet." *Early Music Today* 6 (February-March 1998): 11–15.

Stras, Laurie. "'Onde havrà '1 mond' esempio et vera historia': Musical Echoes of Henri III's Progress through Italy." *Acta musicologica* 52, no. 1 (2000): 7–41.

Mentions a large group of brass players in conjunction with Henri's visit to Ferrara.

Strauchen, E. Bradley. "Giovanni Puzzi and Horn Playing in London's Orchestras in the 1820s." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 37–68.

Tarr, Edward H. "Ferdinand Weinschenk (1831–1910), Pivotal Figure in German Trumpet History." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 10–36.

Threlfall, Robert. "Delius, Berlioz and the (French) Horn." *The Delius Society Journal* no. 123 (Spring 1998): 27–29.

Wagner, Christoph. "Altes Blech rostet nicht: Durch Emigration, Kolonialismus, und Missionstätigkeit verbreitete sich die Blasmusik über die ganze Welt" [Old brass doesn't rust: Through emigration, colonialism, and missionary work, brass music spread over the entire world]. *Neue Zeitschrift für Musik* 160, no. 4 (July-August 1999): 56–59.

Wagner, Lavern J. "Music for America's Hometown Bands: Tracing the Southwell Publishing Firm." *Journal of Band Research* 35, no. 2 (Spring 2000): 1–19.

Weiner, Howard. "André Braun's *Gamme et méthode pour les trombonnes* Revisited." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 93–106.

_____. "François René Gebauer's *50 Leçons pour la trombone basse, alto & tenor*: The Earliest Book of Études for the Trombone." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 11 (1999): 107–12.

_____, and Jeffrey Nussbaum. "A Survey of Contemporary Makers of Early Trombones." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 13 (Summer 2000): 10–16.

Witte, Tom. "Playing Second Horn in Beethoven's Symphony No. 3 (*Eroica*), Op. 55." *The Horn Call* 30, no. 4 (August 2000): 79–80.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521–3042, or on the web at: <http://www.umi.com/hp/Products/Dissertations.html>); customers with academic addresses receive a considerable discount. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

Acta musicologica Bärenreiter-Verlag, Heinrich-Schütz-Allee 35–37, D-34131 Kassel, Germany.

American Music University of Illinois Press, 1325 South Oak Street, Champaign IL 61820–6903.

America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter America's Shrine to Music Museum, The University of South Dakota, 414 East Clark Street, Vermillion SD 57069.

Brass Bulletin P.O. Box 576, CH-1630 Bulle, Switzerland; <http://www.brass-bulletin.ch>

The Delius Society Journal Derek Cox, Treasurer, Mercers, 6 Mount Pleasant, Blockley, Gloucestershire GL56 9BU, UK.

Early Music History Cambridge University Press, 40 West 20th Street, New York NY 10011–4211.

Early Music Today Rhinegold Publishing, 241 Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8EH, UK.

East European Meetings in Ethnomusicology Institutul de Etnografie si Folclor, str. Take Ionescu 25, Bucharest 70166, Romania.

The Horn Call Heidi Vogel, Executive Secretary, International Horn Society, 8180 Thunder Street, Juneau AK 99801.

Informazioni e studi vivaldiani Casa Ricordi Editrice, Via Berchet 2, I-20121 Milano, Italy.

ITA Journal Vern Kagarice, Editor, Box 305338, Denton TX 76203.

Journal of Band Research Troy State University Press, Troy AL 36082.

Journal of the Royal Musical Association Oxford University Press, Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP, UK.

Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent 136, Boulevard de Magenta, F-75010 Paris, France.

Leonardo Music Journal 425 Market Street, 2nd Floor, San Francisco CA 94105.

Musique, images, instruments: Revue française d'organologie et d'iconographie musicale Edition Klincksieck, 8 rue de la Sorbonne, F-75005 Paris, France.

NACWPI Journal Copies of articles available from UMI Article Clearinghouse, University Microfilms International, 300 North Zeeb Road, Box 91, Ann Arbor MI 48106.

Neue Zeitschrift für Musik Schott Musik International, Postfach 3640, D-55026 Mainz, Germany.

TUBA Journal Steven Bryant, TUBA Treasurer, School of Music, University of Texas at Austin, Austin TX 78172–1208.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. His most recent books are: A Biographical Dictionary of English Court Musicians, 1485–1714, compiled by Andrew Ashbee and David Lasocki assisted by Peter Holman and Fiona Kisby, 2 vols. (Aldershot,

Hampshire and Brookfield, VT: Ashgate, 1998) which won the C.B. Oldman Prize, awarded by IAML-UK for "the best British work of music librarianship, reference, or bibliography" for the year 1998; and (ed.) A Time of Questioning: Proceedings of the International Early Double-Reed Symposium Utrecht 1994 (Utrecht: STIMU, 1997 [1999]). He is preparing a book-length bibliography of historic brass for Pendragon Press (Bucina, the Historic Brass Society Series).

See discussions, stats, and author profiles for this publication at:
<https://www.researchgate.net/publication/240792094>

A Bibliography of Writings About Historic Brass Instruments, 2000-2001

Article in *Historic Brass Society Journal* · January 2001

DOI: 10.2153/0120010011011

CITATIONS

0

READS

35

1 author:



David Lasocki

Indiana University Bloomington

39 PUBLICATIONS **29** CITATIONS

SEE PROFILE

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 2000–2001

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between November 2000 and October 2001. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in Western European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Ahrens, Christian. "Zur Verwendung der Posaune im 18. und 19. Jahrhundert" [On the use of the trombone in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 83–92.

Anderson, Mark. "Yankee Brass Band—Still in Style." *The Brass Player* 29 (Winter 2000): 18.

Anzenberger, Friedrich. "Andreas Nemetz schrieb die früheste Lehrmethode für Ventiltrompete: Ein Ergebnis jüngster Forschung" [Andreas Nemetz wrote the earliest method for valve trumpet: a result of recent research]. *IGEB Mitteilungsblatt* no. 2-3 (November 2000): 91–94.

Barclay, Robert. "A Trumpet-Making Workshop for Beginners." In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 215–20.

Barnett, Thomas William. "Manuscripts Containing Trumpet in the Hessische Landes- und Hochschulbibliothek, Darmstadt: An Annotated Catalog." DMA diss., University of Georgia, 2000. OCLC 45494480.

Bevan, Clifford. "Final Thoughts on the Cimbasso, Part 2." *TUBA Journal* 28, no. 1 (Fall 2000): 107–09.

Part 1 appeared in 26, no. 3 (Spring 1999): 56–57.

_____. "Not Quite the Serpent's Swan-Song." *TUBA Journal* 28, no. 2 (Winter 2001): 64.
On Wagner's switch from serpent to bass tuba.

_____. "The One That Got Away." *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 4 (Summer 2000): 41–42.
On the alto ophicleide, or *quinticlave*.

_____. "Think Me Up a Tuba." *TUBA Journal* 28, no. 4 (Summer 2001): 58–59.
On the invention of the bass tuba.

_____. *The Tuba Family*. 2nd ed., rev., enl., and updated. Winchester: Piccolo Press, 2000. OCLC 45648770.

The first edition was published in 1978 by Faber & Faber (London) and Charles Scribner's Sons (New York).

_____. "What Do You Play in *A Midsummer Night's Dream Overture*?" *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 2 (Winter 1999): 61–62.

Boer, Bertil van. "Laßt lustig die Hörner erschallen: Resolutions to Two Problems in Horn Performance Practice of the Late Eighteenth Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 113–60.

Bowman, Joseph L. "Paving the Way: Pioneer American and British Cornet Soloists." *NACWPI Journal* 48, no. 2 (Winter 1999–2000): 17–23.

_____. "The Sacred Trumpet Cantatas of Johann Sebastian Bach." *NACWPI Journal* 49, no. 4 (Summer 2001): 4–11.

Büchler, Alfred. "Horns and Trumpets in Byzantium: Images and Texts." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 23–59.

Cañas Gálvez, Francisco de Paula. "La música en la Corte de Juan II de Castilla (1406–1454): Nuevas fuentes para su estudio" [Music at the Court of Juan II of Castille (1406–1454): new sources for its study]. *Revista de musicología* 23, no. 2 (2000): 367–94.
Includes a section on the *ministriles*.

Carlini, Antonio. "Lo strepitoso risonar de' stromenti da fiato & timballerie': Modalità e modelli della musica pubblica a Venezia en in Italia negli anni della Rivoluzione francese" ["The loud resounding of winds and kettledrums": Modes and models of

public music performance in Venice and in Italy in the years of the French Revolution]. In: *Laere e fosco, il ciel s'imbruna: Arti e musica a Venezia dalla fine della Repubblica al Congresso di Vienna: Atti del convegno internazionale di studi, Venezia, Palazzo Giustinian Lolin, 10-12 aprile 1997*, a cura di Francesco Passadore e Franco Rossi, 473-505. Serie III: Studi musicologici, B: Atti di convegni, 4. Venice: Fondazione Levi, 2000. OCLC 47753246.

Carr, Cynthia. "Music for Oboe, Horn, and Piano Trio." *The Horn Call* 31, no. 2 (February 2001): 33-40.

An annotated bibliography.

Carter, Stewart. "Trombone Pitch in the Eighteenth Century: An Overview." In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 53-66.

Collins, Timothy A. "'Of the Differences between Trumpeters and City Tower Musicians'—The Relationship of *Stadtpeifer* and *Kammeradschaft* Trumpeters." *The Galpin Society Journal* 53 (2000): 51-59.

Cools, Jacques. "La méthode de cornet à 3 pistons, Adolphe Brulon" [Adolphe Brulon's method for the three-valve cornet]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 26 (December 2000): 28-31.

Csiba, Gisela and Josef. "Die Tromba da tirarsi und ihre Folgen" [The tromba da tirarsi and its successors]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 93-103.

Dougherty, George F., IV. "Vehicles of Virtuosity: Cornet Solos from the Wind Band's Golden Age." *Journal of Band Research* 36, no. 1 (Fall 2000): 77-85.

Ecker, Heinz. "Die Harmoniemusik von Franz Krommer: Versuch einer kritischen Bestandsaufnahme, mit thematischem Katalog" [The *harmonie* music of Franz Krommer: An attempt at a critical inventory, with thematic catalog]. 2 vols. Doctoral diss., Johann-Wolfgang-Goethe-Universität, Frankfurt am Main, 2001.

Eickhoff, Hans. "Der Komponist Hugo Kauder (1888-1972) oder: Die ewige Suche nach Literatur für die Besetzung Oboe, Horn und Klavier" [The composer Hugo Kauder (1888-1972), or, The eternal search for literature for the ensemble of oboe, horn, and piano]. *Rohrblatt: Magazin für Oboe, Klarinette, Fagott und Saxophon* 16, no. 1 (March 2001): 10-14.

Eldredge, Niles. "Biological and Material Cultural Evolution: Are There Any True Parallels?" *Perspectives in Ethology* 13 (2000): 113-53.

Uses the cornet as an example of material cultural evolution.

- Engelke, Luis C. "The Keyed Bugle and its Soloists." *NACWPI Journal* 49, no. 3 (Spring 2001): 3–9.
- Fleming, Michael. "Some Points Arising from a Survey of Wills and Inventories." *The Galpin Society Journal* 53 (2000): 301–11.
One will cited mentions brass instruments.
- Forza, Tranquillo. *Il bocchino nei labiofoni: un approccio moderno di analisi, scelta ed usa dei bocchini per tromba, trombone, corno, flicorno e tuba* [The brass mouthpiece: a modern approach to the analysis, selection, and use of mouthpieces for the trumpet, trombone, horn, flugelhorn, and tuba]. Vuarmarens, Switzerland: Editions BIM, 2000.
Includes a section on historical mouthpieces.
- Grosjean, Ardis. "The Sad But Musical End of Trumpeter Carsten Mistleff, or Hard Times in Stockholm in the 1590s." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 255–58.
- Guion, David M. "Theories of Tuning and Ensemble Practice in Italian Dramatic Music of the Early Baroque, or, Oh Where, Oh Where Have the Wind Instruments Gone?" *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 230–43.
- Heartz, Daniel. "Abt Vogler on the Horn Parts in Peter Winter's Symphony in D minor (1778): A View from Within the Mannheim Orchestra." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 89–101.
- Heyde, Herbert. "Jean-Louis Antoine, Valve Horn." *The Metropolitan Museum of Art Bulletin* 58, no. 2 (Fall 2000): 39.
- Herbert, Trevor. "Trombones and the English Court c. 1480–c. 1680." In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 31–38.
- Immer, Friedemann. "Die Klappentrompete" [The keyed trumpet]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 143–54.
- Ingle, Ronnie Dale. "François Georges Auguste Dauverne's (1800–1874) 'Thème varié no. 6 pour trompette chromatique': A Performance Edition." DMA diss., The University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 2000.
- Jeurissen, Herman. "Mozart's Hornkonzerte: Ihre Entstehungsgeschichte und Überlieferung = Les concerti pour cor de Mozart: Historique de leur création et de leur passage à la postérité = The Horn Concerti of W.A. Mozart (1756–1791): From Their Origins to the Present Day." *Brass Bulletin* no. 113 (2001): 86–92; 114 (2001): 60–65.

Kampmann, Bruno. "Le cor d'harmonie: Système McCracken" [The harmonic horn: The McCracken system]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 24 (December 1999): 11-12.

Kirnbauer, Martin. "Blechbläserinstrumentenbau im 15. Jahrhundert: Überlegungen am Beispiel Nürnbergs" [Brass-instrument making in the fifteenth century: thoughts on the example of Nuremberg]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 15-29.

Klaus, Sabine K. "Frühe Instrumente der Firma Hirsbrunner, Sumiswald, im Historischen Museum Basel" [Early instruments of the firm of Hirsbrunner, Sumiswald, in the Historical Museum, Basel]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 125-42.

_____. "Haas & Haas: A Miniature Horn and a Natural Trumpet from the Most Famous Nürnberg Workshop." *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* 28, no. 2 (May 2001): 4-5.

_____. "Outstanding Trumpets, Trombones, and Horns in the Musical Instrument Collection of the Historical Museum, Basel." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 1-22.

_____. "Persistent 'Detective Work' Sheds New Light on Two Precious Ivory Cornetti in the Utley Collection." *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* 28, no. 1 (February 2001): 4-5.

Krause, Sebastian. "Der Posaunengott: Zum 200. Geburtstag des Posaunenheros Carl Traugott Queißer" [The trombone god: On the 200th birthday of the trombone hero Carl Traugott Queisser]. *Das Orchester: Zeitschrift für Orchesterkultur und Rundfunk-Chorwesen* 48, no. 12 (December 2000): 21-25.

Krickeberg, Dieter. "Über Spuren von Trompetenzügen" [Concerning traces on trumpet slides]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 105-10.

Krüger, Walther. "Die Klappentrompete: Struktur und akustisches Verhalten im Vergleich zur Ventiltrompete" [The keyed trumpet: structure and acoustical properties compared with the valve trumpet]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 155-65.

La Grandville, Frédéric de. "Index de noms de facteurs d'instruments à vent" [Index to the names of wind instrument makers (represented in French museums)]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 12 (special) (April 2001).

Laubhold, Lars E. "Sensation or Forgery? The 1677 Soprano Trombone of Christiann Kofahl." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 259-65.

Leonard, Charlotte A. "The Role of the Trombone and its *Affekt* in the Lutheran Church Music of Seventeenth-Century Saxony and Thuringia: The Mid- and Late Seventeenth Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 161–209.

The second part of a study that began with "... The Early Seventeenth Century," *HBSJ* 10 (1998): 57–91.

Lerch, Tom. "Die Beurteilung endoskopischer Untersuchungen historischer Blechblasinstrumente des Musikinstrumenten-Museums Berlin" [The findings of endoscopic studies of historical brass instruments in the Musikinstrumenten-Museum of Berlin]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 111–18.

Lindner, Andreas. *Die kaiserlichen Hoftrompeter und Hofpauker im 18. und 19. Jahrhundert* [The imperial court trumpeters and timpanists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries]. Wiener Veröffentlichungen zur Musikwissenschaft, 36. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 1999. ISBN 3795209889. OCLC 45460988.

Lustig, Monika. "Bemerkungen zu zwei Naturtrompeten der Blechblasinstrumentenmacher-Familie Schmied (Pfaffendorf) aus der Musikinstrumentensammlung Michaelstein" [Remarks on the two natural trumpets of the brass-making Schmied family (Pfaffendorf) in the musical instrument collection of Michaelstein]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 119–24.

Mandat wieder das unbefugte Trompeten-Blasen und Heer-Paucken-Schlagen (Dresden 1736) [Mandate against unauthorized trumpet and timpani playing (Dresden, 1736)]. Kommentiert von Klaus Thomayer; im Auftrag der Stiftung Kloster Michaelstein herausgegeben von Bert Siegmund. Michaelsteiner Forschungsbeiträge, 20. Blankenburg: Stiftung Kloster Michaelstein, 2000. ISBN 389512110X. OCLC 44850023.

McGee, Timothy. "Giovanni Cellini, *Piffero* of Florence." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 210–25.

Followed by an epilogue by Keith Polk (q.v.). Originally published in Italian as "Giovanni Cellini, Piffero di Firenze," *Revista italiana di musicologia* 32, no. 2 (1997): 201–21.

Melton, William. "Greetings from Heaven, or Demonic Noise? A History of the Wagner Tuba. Part 1: The Vision." *The Horn Call* 31, no. 4 (August 2001): 49–58.

Myers, Arnold. "The Living Role of Historical Instruments." *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 3 (Spring 2000): 60–61.

_____. "Museums." *TUBA Journal* 28, no. 3 (Spring 2001): 49–50.

On instruments of the “tuba family” in the Musée des Instruments de Musique, Brussels, Belgium, and the Musikmuseum of the Historisches Museum Basel, Switzerland.

_____. “Organology: A Position Paper.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): viii–xi.

_____. “Trombone Designs in the Transition from Early Models to Modern.” In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 39–52.

Nussbaum, Jeffrey. “A Survey of [Early] Trumpet Makers World-Wide.” *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 14 (Summer 2001): 12–19.

_____. “An Interview with Cornett Player, Maker, and Musica Fiata Director Roland Wilson.” *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 14 (Summer 2001): 3–7.

Ortega, Judith. “La real capilla de Carlos III: Los músicos instrumentistas y la provisión de sus plazas” [The royal chapel of Carlos III: the instrumentalists and the provision of their places]. *Revista de musicología* 23, no. 2 (2000): 395–442.

Includes two trumpeters.

Panetta, Vincent J. “‘For Godsake Stop!’ Improvised Music in the Streets of New Orleans, ca. 1890.” *The Musical Quarterly* 84, no. 1 (Spring 2000): 5–29.

Includes a description of a quartet of musicians “armed with pieces of brass.”

Parks, Raymond. *Edinburgh University Collection of Historic Musical Instruments: Portfolio of Drawings of Mouthpieces for Brass Instruments*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Collection of Historic Musical Instruments, 1999.

Patterson, Stephen Joseph. *Jules Levy (1838-1903): Cornet Virtuoso Extraordinaire*. Ph.D. diss., University of Kansas, 2000. OCLC 45857735.

Peters, Gretchen. “Urban Minstrels in Late Medieval Southern France: Opportunities, Status and Professional Relationships.” *Early Music History* 19 (2000): 201–35.

Most of the minstrels are described as “trompayre” or the like.

Polk, Keith. “Epilogue: Trombones, Trumpets, and Cornetti in Florence c.1500.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 226–29.

An epilogue to the article by Timothy McGee (q.v.), placing his “remarks in the context of brass performance in Florence in the late Middle Ages and early Renaissance.”

Posaunen und Trompeten: Geschichte — Akustik — Spieltechnik: 19. Musikinstrumentenbau-Symposium in Michaelstein, 20. bis 22. November 1998 [Trombones and trumpets: history, acoustics, playing technique: nineteenth musical-instrument-making

symposium in Michaelstein, 20–22 November 1998]. Redaktion Monika Lustig and Howard Weiner. Michaelsteiner Konferenzberichte, 60. Blankenburg: Stiftung Kloster Michaelstein, 2000. ISBN: 3895121169 (pbk.). OCLC 46669462.

Prowse, Martin J. “Brass Instruments with Painted Bells.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 280–81.

Pussiau, Vincent. “Jean-Baptiste (II) et (III) Tabard, deux facteurs d’instruments de musique à vent lyonnais (suite)” [Jean-Baptiste Tabard II and III: two wind instrument makers from Lyons (conclusion)].” *Larigot: Bulletin de l’Association des Collectionneurs d’Instruments à Vent* no. 26 (December 2000): 9–11.
The first part appeared in no. 25 (March 2000): 3–25.

Raine, Craig. *Haydn and the Valve Trumpet*. London: Picador, 2000. ISBN 033037575X. OCLC 43879879.
Originally published: London: Faber & Faber, 1990.

Richardson, William Stone. “Wind Ensemble Music for the Trumpet: An Excerpt Guide.” DMA diss., The University of Texas at Austin, 2000.

Romero, Frank Edward. “‘Morceaux de Concours pour trompette et cornet’: Contest Pieces of the Paris Conservatory, 1835–1999.” DMA diss., The University of Oklahoma, 2001.

Salmen, Walter. “Waldhorn and Song in the Open Air.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 102–12.

Schleuning, Peter. “Bach und die Natur: Beobachtungen an den Brandenburgischen Konzerten” [Bach and Nature: observations on the Brandenburg Concertos]. *Österreichische Musikzeitschrift* 55, no. 4 (2000): 23–35.

Schwartz, Richard I. “The African American Contribution to the Cornet of the Nineteenth Century: Some Long-Lost Names.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 12 (2000): 61–88.

_____. *The Cornet Compendium: The History and Development of the Nineteenth-Century Cornet*. Privately published by the author (Irisrick@aol.com); also downloadable at <http://www.angelfire.com/music2/thecornetcompendium>

Seraphinoff, Richard. “Compromise and Authenticity in the Baroque Trumpet and Horn.” In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 199–206.

Shannon, Jacqueline Faissal. “Establishing Paper-types for Manuscript Dating Purposes: Filigranology, Rastrology and their Application to HR III 4 1/2 2 427 and

Other Manuscripts from the Oettingen-Wallerstein Music Collection.” DMA diss., University of Washington, 2000.

Concerns a “misattributed” concerto for two horns and orchestra in E \flat major.

Sluchin, Benny, and Raymond Lapie. *Le trombone à travers les âges* [The trombone through the ages]. Préface de Pierre Boulez. Musique, classique, essai. Paris: Editions Buchet-Chastel, 2001. ISBN 228301834X. OCLC 47971189.

Steele-Perkins, Crispian. *Trumpet*. Variation: Yehudi Menuhin Music Guides. London: Kahn & Averill, 2001. ISBN 1871082692. OCLC 48025491.

Strauchen, Elizabeth Bradley. *Giovanni Puzzi: His Life and Work: A View of Horn Playing and Musical Life in England from 1817 into the Victorian Era (c. 1855)*. D.Phil. thesis, University of Oxford, 2000. OCLC 47304162.

“La tablature du serpent (ordinaire et à clefs): Méthode de plain-chant parisien, M. Lucan — 1828” [Tablature for the serpent (ordinary and keyed): [taken from the] method for Parisian plainchant by Matthieu Lucan, 1828]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 26 (December 2000): 6–8.

Tammen, Björn R. *Musik und Bild in Chorraum mittelalterlicher Kirchen, 1100–1500* [Music and art in the choirs of medieval churches, 1100–1500]. Berlin: Reimer, 2000. ISBN 3496012188. OCLC 44746230.

Includes trumpets.

Tarr, Edward H. “Coiled Natural Trumpet in E-flat (a' = 455 Hz) by Michael Saurle (1772–1845), Munich c. 1820.” *ITG Journal* 25, no. 3 (March 2001): 58.

Photograph with caption.

_____. “Trumpet in F with Two Tubular (Stoelzel) Valves by James Reynolds (fl. 1848–56), London c. 1853–56.” *ITG Journal* 25, no. 4 (June 2001): 43.

Photograph with caption.

Thein, Heinrich. “Instrumentenbautechnische Forschungen und Erfahrungen im Nachbau und in der Restaurierung von Blechblasinstrumenten” [Investigations and experiences in copying and restoring brass instruments]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 207–14.

Treybig, Joel. “The Life of George Edward Ives: Cornetist and Bandmaster.” *ITG Journal* 25, no. 3 (March 2001): 33–37.

Ives (1845–1894) was the father of the composer Charles Ives.

- Turner, Charles Robert, Jr. "Six trios pour deux cornet[s] à pistons et ophicleide basse ou cor à pistons' (1846), opus 104, by Jean Baptiste Schiltz: A Performance Edition." DMA diss., The University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 2000. OCLC 45699822, 45724833.
- Weimer, Lee J. "Solo Trumpet Playing in New York City from 1835 to 1845." *NACWPI Journal* 49, no. 1 (Fall 2000): 11–24; 49, no. 2 (Winter 2000–2001): 14–41.
- Weiner, Howard. "Der Sopranposaunen-Schwindel" [The soprano trombone swindle]. In *Posaunen und Trompeten*, pp. 67–82.
- Weston, Stephen J. "Choir-Band Instrumentation: Two County Surveys." *The Galpin Society Journal* 52 (1999): 305–13.
- White, Micky. "Biographical Notes on the 'Figlie di coro' of the Pietà Contemporary with Vivaldi." *Informazione e studi vivaldiani* 21 (2000): 75–96.
Mentions one horn player ("Claudia," 1708/09–1781).

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained through interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); www.umi.com. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

If you cannot obtain a particular article on interlibrary loan, write to the periodical in question to purchase a back issue or offprint. The addresses of these periodicals are as follows:

America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter America's Shrine to Music Museum, The University of South Dakota, 414 East Clark Street, Vermillion SD 57069.

The Brass Player The New York Brass Conference for Scholarships, 315 W 53rd Street, New York NY 10019.

Brass Bulletin P.O. Box 576, CH–1630 Bulle, Switzerland; <http://www.brass-bulletin.ch>

Early Music History Cambridge University Press, 40 West 20th Street, New York NY 10011–4211.

The Galpin Society Journal Membership Secretary, The Galpin Society, Richard Ford, 260 Sandycombe Road, Kew, Richmond, Surrey TW9 3NP, UK; richard.a.ford@talk21.com

The Horn Call Heidi Vogel, Executive Secretary, International Horn Society, 8180 Thunder Street, Juneau AK 99801; hvogel@gci.net

IGEB Mitteilungsblatt Internationale Gesellschaft zur Erforschung und Förderung der Blasmusik, Doris Schweinzer, Universität für Musik und darstellende Kunst, Institut für Musikethnologie, Leonhardstr. 15, A-8010 Graz, Austria.

Informazioni e studi vivaldiani Casa Ricordi Editrice, Via Berchet 2, I-20121 Milano, Italy.

ITA Journal Vern Kagarice, Editor, Box 305338, Denton TX 76203.

ITG Journal David C. Jones, ITG Treasurer, 241 E Main Street #247, Westfield MA 01086-1633; treasurer@trumpetguild.org; www.trumpetguild.org

Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent 136, Boulevard de Magenta, F-75010 Paris, France.

The Metropolitan Museum of Art Bulletin The Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1000 Fifth Avenue, New York NY 10028-0198.

The Musical Quarterly Oxford University Press, 2001 Evans Road, Cary NC 27513-2009.

NACWPI Journal Copies of articles available from UMI Article Clearinghouse, University Microfilms International, 300 North Zeeb Road, Box 91, Ann Arbor MI 48106.

Das Orchester: Zeitschrift für Orchesterkultur und Rundfunk-Chorwesen Schott Musik International, Postfach 3640, D-55026 Mainz, Germany; Zeitschrift-Anzeigen@Schott-Musik.de

Österreichische Musikzeitschrift Hegelgasse 13/22, A-1010 Wien, Austria.

Perspectives in Ethology Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, PO Box 358, Accord Station, Hingham MA 02018-0358; kluwer@wkap.com

Revista de musicología Sociedad Española de Musicología, Carretas, 14, 7^o – Desp. B-3, E-28012 Madrid, Spain; revista@idecnet.com; www.sedem.es

Rohrblatt: Magazin für Oboe, Klarinette, Fagott und Saxophon Verlag Karl Hofmann, Steinwasenstrasse 6-8, D-73614 Schorndorf, Germany.

TUBA Journal Kathy Aylsworth Brantigan, TUBA Treasurer, 2253 Downing Street, Denver CO 80205; kathy@denverbrass.org

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. His most recent books are: A Biographical Dictionary of English Court Musicians, 1485–1714, compiled by Andrew Ashbee and David Lasocki assisted by Peter Holman and Fiona Kisby, 2 vols. (Aldershot, Hampshire and Brookfield, VT: Ashgate, 1998); and (ed.) A Time of Questioning: Proceedings of the International Early Double-Reed Symposium Utrecht 1994 (Utrecht: STIMU, 1997 [1999]). He is preparing a book-length bibliography of historic brass for Pendragon Press (Bucina, the Historic Brass Society Series).

Bibliography of Writings about Historic Brass Instruments, 2001-2002

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between November 2001 and October 2002. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Ahrens, Christian. "Der Serpent in Kantaten des frühen 18. Jahrhunderts aus Mitteldeutschland" [The serpent in early eighteenth-century cantatas from middle Germany]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 65-75.

_____. "Zur Verwendung von Trompeten in dem Kantaten Johann Theodor Roemhildts (1684-1756)" [On the use of trumpets in the cantatas of Johann Theodor Roemhildt (1684-1756)]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 106-21.

Alberola i Verdú, Josep Antoni. "Tomás Vicent Tosca (1651-1723): 'The Production of Sound in Brasswind Instruments' = 'De la production du son dans les instruments de cuivre' = 'Von der Tonerzeugung auf Blechblasinstrumenten.'" *Brass Bulletin* no. 113 (2001): 34-38.

Altschuler, Eric Lewin. "Trumpet Major? Did Bach Write the Fanfare in Gottfried Reiche's Portrait?" *The Musical Times* 142, no. 4 = no. 1876 (Fall 2001): 29-31.

Aringer, Klaus. "Clarinpartien im Werk Michael Haydns und seiner Zeitgenossen" [Clarino parts in the works of Michael Haydn and his contemporaries]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 122-37.

Ardivino, Joseph Paul. *Creating Contemporary Performance Editions of Giuseppe Torelli's Sinfonia con tromba in D major, G. 10, and Tomaso Albinoni's Concerto for Trumpet in C major*. D.M.A. diss., The University of Alabama, 2001. ISBN 0493176055. OCLC 50030564.

Bachelder, Dan, and Norman Hunt. *Guide to Teaching Brass*. 6th ed. Boston: McGraw-Hill, 2002.

Baroncini, Rodolfo. "Zorzi Trombetta e il complesso di piffari e tromboni della Serenissima: per una storia 'qualitativa' della musica strumentale del XV secolo" [Zorzi Trombetta and the piffaro and trombone ensemble of the Serenissima: toward a "qualitative" history of the instrumental music of the fifteenth century]. *Studi musicali* 31, no. 1 (2002): 57-87.

An expanded and revised version of "Zorzi Trombetta and the Band of Piffari and Trombones of the Serenissima: New Documentary Evidence," *Historic Brass Society Journal* (this issue).

Bartels, Uwe. *Das Furst-Pless-Horn und seine Tradition: Bilder, Berichte und Dokumente zur Kulturgeschichte* [The Furst-Pless horn and its tradition: Pictures, reports, and documents on cultural history]. Hanover: Landbuch, 1999.

Berke, Hendrik. "Die Wiederbelebung barocker Clarinpartien im 19. und 20. Jahrhundert" [The revival of Baroque clarino parts in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 138-60.

Bevan, Clifford. "The One That Got Away." *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 4 (Summer 2000): 41-42.

On the quinticlave (a small ophicleide).

_____; introduction by Craig Kridel. "What Do You Play in 'A Midsummer Night's Dream Overture'?" *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 2 (Winter 1999): 61-62.

Blackmore, Lisa Ann. *Sacred Vocal Compositions Including Trumpet Parts by Pavel Josef Vejvanovsky (c. 1639-1693)*. D.M.A. diss., University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2002. ISBN 493579125.

Blaut, Stephan. "Die Jagerhörner in den Rüstkammer der Staatlichen Kunstsammlungen Dresden" [The hunting horns in the armory of the Staatliche Kunstsammlungen, Dresden]. *Musica instrumentalis: Zeitschrift für Organologie* 2 (1999): 8-22.

- Boonzajer Flaes, Rob. *Brass Unbound: Secret Children of the Colonial Brass Band*. 2nd rev. ed. Amsterdam: Royal Tropical Institute, 2000. Includes a CD. ISBN 9068322788. OCLC 45384607, 49386374.
- Bruns, W. "Der schwierige Weg zur Oberton-Perfektion: Harry Höfers Unterrichtsmaterial für das Naturhorn macht Lust auf ein wiederentdecktes Instrument" [The difficult path to overtone perfection: Harry Höfer's teaching material for the natural horn whets the appetite for a rediscovered instrument]. *Neue Musikzeitung* 50, no. 3 (2001): 26.
- Bubert, Dennis. "The Ride of the Valkyries by Richard Wagner." *ITA Journal* 30, no. 3 (July 2002): 18-21.
- Campbell, D. Murray. "Acoustical Factors Affecting the Intonation of Cornetti." In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 9-23.
- _____. "Serpent and Contrabassoon Acoustics." *Questions & Answers. ITEA Journal* 29, no. 4 (summer 2002): 54-55.
- Carter, Stewart. "The Gütter Family: Wind Instrument Makers and Dealers to the Moravian Brethren in America." *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 27 (2001): 48-83.
- Clark, Andrew. "The Heyday of the Hand Horn and the Birth of the Valved Horn: A Study of Nineteenth-Century Horn Technique as Revealed in the Solo Works for Horn by Carl Czerny." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 118-27.
- Collins, Timothy. "Old Music and New Instruments: Baroque Music and the Modern Trumpet." *ITG Journal* 26, no. 4 (June 2002): 15-21.
- Cools, Jacques. "L'embouchure des 'cuivres' aux XIX-XXèmes siècles" [Brass mouthpieces in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries]. *Larigor: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 27 (August 2001): 25-31.
- Davis, Ronald. "Twenty-One Years of The Tuba Family." *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 1 (Fall 1999): 59-61.
On Clifford Bevan's book, *The Tuba Family*.
- Doderer, Gerhard. "Nach Lissabon—mit Pauken und Trompeten! Die Verpflichtung eines deutschen Trompeterkorps an den Hof Johannis V (1723)" [To Lisbon—with trumpets and drums! The engagement of a German trumpet corps at the court of João V (1723)]. *Musica instrumentalis: Zeitschrift für Organologie* 3 (2001): 79-103.

Dumoulin, Géry. "A Look at the Evolution of the Valved Cornet and its Repertoire = Aperçu sur l'évolution et le répertoire du cornet à pistons = Abriss über Entwicklung und Literatur des Kornetts." *Brass Bulletin* no. 118 (2002): 40-49.

Ecklund, Peter. "'Louis Licks' and Nineteenth-Century Cornet Etudes: The Roots of Melodic Improvisation as Seen in the Jazz Style of Louis Armstrong." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 90-101.

Egger, Rainer. "Die Problematik des Naturtrompetenspiels aus akustischer und instrumentenbautechnischer Sicht" [The difficulty of natural trumpet playing from the acoustical and instrument-making points of view]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 83-90.

Eliaison, Robert E. "Charles G. Christman, Musical Instrument Maker in Nineteenth-Century New York." *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 27 (2001): 84-119.

Garcin-Marrou, Michel. "The Ascending Valve System in France: A Technical and Historical Approach. Part 1." *The Horn Call* 32, no. 2 (February 2002): 39-44. Said to be translated from *La revue du corniste* 73 (1997): 20-27.

Garnier-Marzullo, Marie. "A Brief Discussion on Cornetto Making with Serge Delmas." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 15 (Summer 2002): 10-11.

Gát, Eszter Fontana. "A Riedlek Sopronban: hangszerépiök négy generációja" [The Riedl Family in Sopron: Four Generations of Musical Instrument Makers]. *Magyar zene* 39, no. 1 (February 2001): 65-83.
The Riedl family made brass instruments.

Gumpłowicz, Philippe. *Les travaux d'Orphée: Deux siècles de pratique musicale amateur en France, 1820-2000—Harmonies, chorales, fanfares* [The labors of Orpheus: Two centuries of amateur musical activity in France, 1820-2000—symphonic ensembles, choirs, and brass bands]. Collection historique. Nouv. éd. Paris: Aubier, 2000. ISBN 2700723309. OCLC 48660792.

Haas, Gerlinde. "Pauken und Trompeten ... im Frauenkloster: 'Komponistinnen,' Chorregentinnen und andere Musikerinnen des Ursulinen-Klosters in Graz in der Zeit 1686-1755/65" [Timpani and trumpets ... in the convent: "women composers," choirmistresses, and other female musicians at the St. Ursula Convent in Graz, 1686-1765]. *Musicologica austriaca: Jahresschrift der Österreichischen Gesellschaft für Musikwissenschaft* 18 (1999): 141-50.

- Hansen, Kristen S. "Roles for the Horn in Danzi's Trio in F major, Op. 23." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 128-37.
- Heidler, Manfred. "The German Tenor Horn: A Forgotten Instrument." *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 4 (Summer 2000): 31-37.
- Heyde, Herbert. "Methods of Organology and Proportions in Brass Wind Instrument Making." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 1-51.
- Heyder, Bernd. "Bachs Leipziger Motettenstil" [Bach's Leipzig motet style]. In *Bach und die Stile: Bericht über das 2. Dortmunder Bach-Symposium 1998*, herausgegeben von Martin Geck in Verbindung mit Klaus Hofmann, pp. 123-46. *Dortmunder Bach-Forschungen*, herausgegeben von Martin Geck, Band 2. Dortmund: Klangfarben Musikverlag, 1999.
Discusses Bach's use of the *Posaunenchor* (trombone choir) of the Stadtpfeifer.
- Holmes, Michael. "An Interview with Esa Fagerholm, Finnish Sackbut Player." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 15 (Summer 2002): 23-25.
- Johns, Michael. "A History of Brass Ensembles." *The Instrumentalist* 55, no. 2 (September 2000): 72, 74, 76, 78, 80.
- Johnson, Keith. *Brass Performance and Pedagogy*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2002.
- Kampmann, Bruno. "Le trombone à pavillon avant ou arrière. III" [The trombone with bell forward or backward, III]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 28 (December 2001): 5-8.
The first and second parts appeared in no. 24 (December 1999): 4-10 and no. 25 (March 2000): 30-31.
- Kirnbauer, Martin. "'lan mil cccc xlii marcian guitbert mefit a limoges'—Zur einer neu aufgefundenen Trompete aus dem Jahr 1442" ["1442: Marcian Guitbert made in Limoges"—On a newly discovered trumpet from the year 1442]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 91-105.
- Klaus, Sabine. "Acquisition of a Superb Horn Built by Johann Karl Kodisch in 1684 Helps Preserve a House Built in Germany in 1510." *America's Shrine to Music Museum Newsletter* 28, no. 3 (August 2001): 4-5.
- _____. "A Wooden Trumpet Built Exclusively for Wagner's *Tristan und Isolde* Is Added to the Utley Collection." *America's National Music Museum Newsletter* 29, no. 3 (August 2002): 4-5.

_____. "Zwei Elfenbein-Zinken aus Süddeutschland?" [Two ivory cornetti from south Germany?]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 35-50.

Koehler, Elisa. "A Beginner's Guide to the Baroque Natural Trumpet." *ITG Journal* 26, no. 3 (March 2002): 16-24.

Köhler, Wolfgang. "Zur Verwendung von Tenor- und Baßzinken" [On the use of tenor and bass cornetti]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 51-64.

Krause, Sebastian. "'God of the Trombone' = 'Le dieu du trombone' = 'Der Posaunengott.'" *Brass Bulletin* no. 117 (2002): 68-80.

About Carl Traugott Queisser (1800-1846). A reprint (with English and French translations and more paragraphing) of his article "Der Posaunengott: Zum 200. Geburtstag des Posaunenheros Carl Traugott Queißer," *Das Orchester: Zeitschrift für Orchesterkultur und Rundfunk-Chorwesen* 48, no. 12 (December 2000): 21-25.

Krüger, Walther. "Die Klappentrompete: Struktur und akustisches Verhalten im Vergleich zur Ventiltrompete" [The keyed trumpet: structure and acoustical properties in relation to the valve trumpet]. *Instrumentenbau-Zeitschrift* 54 (March-April 2000): 32-38.

Reprinted from *Posaunen und Trompeten: Geschichte-Akustik-Spieltechnik: 19. Musikinstrumentenbau-Symposium in Michaelstein, 20. bis 22. November 1998*, ed. Monika Lustig and Howard Weiner, Michaelsteiner Konferenzberichte, 60 (Blankenburg: Stiftung Kloster Michaelstein, 2000), pp. 155-65.

Lazarus-Woodbury, Mary, and Sylvia Sheblessy. "A History of Taps." *The Instrumentalist* 56, no. 9 (April 2002): 95.

Two brief accounts from articles about *Taps* previously published in this magazine.

Lange, Hans-Jürgen. *Sein Lob ton`im Posaunenschalle: Die Geschichte der Posaunenchorarbeit in der Hannoverschen Landeskirche* [Let the sound of the trombones ring His praise: The history of trombone choirs in the churches in Hanover province]. *Geschichte*, 24. Munster: Lit, 1999. ISBN 3825844005.

Macia, Jean-Luc. "Jean-Sébastien Bach: et Dieu devient musique. L'univers dans un orchestre" [J. S. Bach: And God becomes music. The universe in an orchestra]. *Diapason: le magazine de la musique classique* no. 466 (January 2000): 36-39.

Briefly examines the orchestra of Bach's time, including the trumpet and horn, and the problems of using such instruments today.

Mathez, Jean-Pierre. "Kalison: 3rd Generation = 3^e génération = 3. Generation." *Brass Bulletin* no. 115 (2001): 84-88.

The Italian firm of Kalison makes some early brass instruments as well as modern ones.

- _____. "The Universal Trumpet of Gabriele Cassone = La trompette universelle de Gabriele Cassone = Die universelle Trompete des Gabriele Cassone." *Brass Bulletin* no. 115 (2001): 64-72.
- McCann, John R. "Forty Years in the Cornett Mines." In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 76-82.
- McChesney, James David. *The Emergence of the Trumpet Soloist: Past, Present and Prospects for the Future*. D.M. document, Indiana University, 2002.
- McGrattan, Alexander. "Italian Wind Instrumentalists at the Scottish Royal Court during the 16th Century." *Early Music* 29, no. 4 (November 2001): 535-51.
- Melton, William. "Greetings from Heaven, or Demonic Noise? A History of the Wagner Tuba. Part 2: The Apprentice." *The Horn Call* 32, no. 1 (November 2001): 37-43. "Part 3: Trials and Transpositions," 32, no. 2 (February 2002): 55-62. "Part 4: Fruition," 32, no. 3 (May 2002): 43-53. "Part 1: The Vision" appeared in 31, no. 4 (August 2001): 49-58.
- Monelle, Raymond. "Horn and Trumpet as Topical Signifiers." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 102-17.
- Myers, Arnold. "The Living Role of Historical Instruments." *TUBA Journal* 27, no. 3 (Spring 2000): 60-61.
- _____. "Museums." *ITEA Journal* 29, no. 3 (spring 2002): 59-60.
Concerns: Barlow model tubas, French-pitch tubas, and the value of old manufacturers' archives.
- Nilsson, Ann-Marie. "Blås på Svenska" [Swedish brass], *STM-Online* 4 (2001); http://www.musik.uu.se/ssm/stmonline/vol_4/index.html (accessed 18 October 2002).
- _____. "Brass Instruments in Small Swedish Wind Ensembles during the Late Nineteenth Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 176-209.
- Paduch, Arno. "New Facts about Cornetto Playing in 17th-Century Central America." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 15 (summer 2002): 13.
- Parks, Raymond. *Trumpet in E-flat (Probably England, Early 18th century) with Two Crooks. Shaw-Hellier Collection*. Edinburgh: University of Edinburgh, Collection of Historic Musical Instruments, 2000. Technical drawing.

_____. *Trumpet in E-flat by Hofmaster (London, c. 1760). Shaw-Hellier Collection.* Edinburgh: University of Edinburgh, Collection of Historic Musical Instruments, 2000. Technical drawing.

_____. *Trumpet in E-flat by Winkings (London, mid 18th century). Shaw-Hellier Collection.* Edinburgh: University of Edinburgh, Collection of Historic Musical Instruments, 2000. Technical drawing.

Pinksterboer, Hugo. *The Rough Guide to Trumpet & Trombone, Flugelhorn & Cornet.* Rough Guides: The Essential Tapbook. London: Rough Guides, 2001 (©2000). ISBN: 1858287545. OCLC 46394373, 47837059. *Tapbook: Trumpet & Trombone, Flugelhorn & Cornet.* The Netherlands: Tapbook Co., 2001. ISBN 9076192413. OCLC 49827378.

Polk, Keith. "Instrumental Music in Brussels in the Early 16th Century." *Revue belge de musicologie = Belgisch tijdschrift voor muziekwetenschap* 55 (2001): 91-101.

Preiser, Gotthart. "Die evangelischen Posaunenchöre–Dienstgruppen der Kirchengemeinden" [The evangelical trombone choirs–Service groups of the parishes]. *Gottesdienst und Kirchenmusik* 5 (September-October 2001): 118-19.

Proksch, Bryan. "Valentine Snow (c.1700-1770): New Natural Trumpet Duets from an Unlikely Source = Étonnante découverte de duos historiques originaux pour trompettes naturelles = Überraschende Entdeckung historischer Duos original für Naturtrompeten." *Brass Bulletin* no. 116 (2001): 52-55.

Pursell, John. "Renaissance Iconography in the Museo dell'Opera del Duomo of Florence, Italy." *ITG Journal* 26, no. 2 (January 2002): 6-7.
Concerns Lucca della Robbia's *cantoria* (singing gallery) with trumpeters, carved for the Florence Cathedral and now in the cathedral museum.

Raquet, Markus, and Klaus Martius. "Benninck Meets Sander: A Comparison of Two Early Seventeenth-Century Trumpets." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 52-65.

Rifkin, Joshua. "Klangpracht und Stilauffassung: Zu den Trompeten der Ouvertüre BWV 1069" [Magnificence of sound and style concept: The trumpet parts in the overture BWV 1069]. In *Bach und die Stile: Bericht über das 2. Dortmunder Bach-Symposium 1998*, herausgegeben von Martin Geck in Verbindung mit Klaus Hofmann, pp. 327-45. Dortmund: Bach-Forschungen, herausgegeben von Martin Geck, Band 2. Dortmund: Klangfarben Musikverlag, 1999.

Roche-Wallace, Catherine. "Six Solo Concerti from the Blütezeit of the Oettingen-Wallerstein Hofkapelle." *The Horn Call* 32, no. 1 (November 2001): 51-56.

- Rose, Stewart. "Micaela's Aria in Bizet's *Carmen*." *The Horn Call* 32, no. 1 (November 2001): 71-72.
Letter from Hans Pitzka in 32, no. 2 (February 2002): 8.
- Roust, Colin. "Heavy Metal: The Orchestral History of the Euphonium." *TUBA Journal* 28, no. 3 (Spring 2001): 33-39.
- Saeki, Shigeki. "An Historical Perspective of the Alto Trombone = Le trombone alto, vu dans son contexte historique = Die Altposaune in ihrem geschichtlichen Kontext." *Brass Bulletin* no. 115 (2001): 96-101.
- Salmen, Walter. "Bilder aus der Musizierpraxis um 1530 an einem Prunkerker in Innsbruck" [Pictures from musical practice around 1530 on a roofed bay window in Innsbruck]. *Music in Art: International Journal for Music Iconography* 25, no.1-2 (spring-fall 2000): 51-55.
In front of the famous Golden Dachl in Innsbruck, the sculptor Gregor Turing formed around a roofed bay window a frieze with four scenes, the second of which depicts three court musicians with trumpeter, crumhorn, and cornetto.
- Secrist-Schmedes, Barbera. *Wind Chamber Music for Two to Sixteen Winds: An Annotated Guide*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2002. ISBN 0810842467.
"Winds" here means woodwinds and horn only.
- Shifrin, Ken. *Orchestral Trombone Practice in the Nineteenth Century, with Special Reference to the Alto Trombone*, 2 vols. D.Phil. diss., University of Oxford, 1999.
- _____. "The Valve Trombone, Part 2: The Valve Trombone in the Orchestras of Nineteenth-Century France, Germany, Austria and Bohemia, with Special Focus on the Trombone Works of Dvorák [sic] = Le trombone à pistons, 2e partie: Le trombone à pistons au XIXe siècle dans les orchestres de France, d'Allemagne, d'Autriche et de Bohême, et plus particulièrement dans l'oeuvre de Dvorák [sic] = Die Ventilposaune, 2. Teil: Die Ventilposaune im 19. Jahrhundert in den französischen, deutschen, österreichischen und böhmischen Orchestern, vor allem in Dvorák's [sic] Werk." *Brass Bulletin* no. 112 (2000): 118-26.
- Sluchin, Benny. "'Duplex' Instruments—Yesterday and Today = Les instruments 'duplex'—hier et aujourd'hui = Duplex-Instrumente—gestern und heute." *Brass Bulletin* no. 115 (2001): 112-15.
- Shimada, Toshio. "An Approach to Playing the 2nd Brandenburg Concerto." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* no. 15 (summer 2002): 12.

Tarr, Edward H. "Doubly Folded Natural Trumpet in E-flat ($a' = 455$ Hz), by Michael Saurle (1772-1845)." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 26, no. 2 (January 2002): 42.

Photograph with short commentary.

_____. "An Early Bach Cornet and Trumpet by H.M. Lewis." *ITG Journal* 26, no. 3 (March 2002): 52-54.

_____. "English Slide Trumpet in F, by John Augustus Köhler (c. 1810-1878)." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 26, no. 1 (October 2001): 63.

Photograph with short commentary.

_____. "Further Mandate Against the Unauthorized Playing of Trumpets (Dresden, 1736): Introduction and Translation." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 67-89.

Tröster, Patrick. *Das Alta-Ensemble und seine Instrumente von der Spätgotik bis zur Hochrenaissance (1300-1550). Eine musikikonographische Studie* [The alta ensemble and its instruments from the late Gothic period to the High Renaissance (1300-1550): a study in musical iconography]. Tübingen: MVK Medien Verlag Köhler, 2001.

Verdie, Jean-Claude. "La méthode de corner à pistons: H.C. de Ploosen & Schiltz" [The corner method of H. C. de Ploosen and Schiltz]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent* no. 29 (July 2002): 32-33.

Weiner, Howard. "The Soprano Trombone Hoax." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 138-60.

An earlier, German version, "Der Sopranposaunen-Schwindel," appeared in: *Posaunen und Trompeten: Geschichte-Akustik-Spieltechnik: 19. Musikinstrumentenbau-Symposium in Michaelstein, 20. bis 22. November 1998*, ed. Monika Lustig and Howard Weiner, Michaelsteiner Konferenzberichte, 60 (Blankenburg: Stiftung Kloster Michaelstein, 2000), pp. 67-82.

Williams, Susan. "The Natural Trumpet: A Natural Approach = La trompette naturelle—une approche naturelle = Die Naturtrompete ... Ein natürlicher Zugang." *Brass Bulletin* no. 118 (2002): 34-38.

Wilson, Roland. "Der Klang des Zinken im 16. bis 18. und im 20. Jahrhundert" [The sound of the cornetto in the sixteenth-eighteenth and twentieth centuries]. In *Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine*, pp. 24-34.

Wood, Caroline. "Music Making in a Yorkshire Country House." In *Nineteenth-Century British Music Studies*, I, pp. 209-24. Aldershot: Ashgate, 1999. ISBN 1840142596. OCLC 40460125.

Discusses a collection of sheet music and bound volumes recently reassembled at Burton Constable Hall, showing that the family was developing relationships with local brass bands.

Yeo, Douglas. "Serpentists in Charles Wild's *Choir of the Cathedral of Amiens* (ca. 1826)." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 13 (2001): 161-75.

Zur Geschichte von Cornetto und Clarine: Symposium im Rahmen der 25. Tage Alter Musik in Herne 2000 [On the history of the cornetto and clarino: symposium in the course of the 25th Early Music Days in Herne, 2000]. Veranstalter und Herausgeber: Stadt Herne; Konzeption und Redaktion: Christian Ahrens und Gregor Klinke. München: Katzbichler, 2001. ISBN 3873975815. OCLC 48621515, 50549091.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); <http://www.umi.com/hp/Products/Dissertations.html>. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

Please note that, because of new names for their sponsoring organizations, two periodicals have recently changed their name: *America's Shrine to Music Newsletter* is now *America's National Music Museum Newsletter*, and *TUBA Journal* is now *ITEA Journal*.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. A second edition of his book The Recorder: A Guide to Writings about the Instrument for Players and Researchers (with Richard Griscom) will be published by Routledge, New York, in Spring 2003. He is preparing a book-length bibliography of historic brass for Pendragon Press (Bucina: the Historic Brass Society Series).

Bibliography of Writings about Historic Brass Instruments, 2002-03

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between November 2002 and May 2003. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Acinger, Nevenko. *170 godina limene glazbe u Ravnoj Gori* [170 years of brass music in Ravna Gora]. Rijeka, Croatia: Grafika Zambelli, 2001. ISBN 9539810051.

Agrell, Jeffrey. "‘The Future of the Past’: Interview with Richard Seraphinoff—Player, Teacher, and Horn Maker = ‘Die Zukunft der Vergangenheit’: Gespräch mit Richard Seraphinoff—Musiker, Pädagoge und Hornbauer = ‘Le futur du passé’: Entretien avec Richard Seraphinoff—Musicien, enseignant et facteur de cors." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 120 (2002): 112-18.

Baroncini, Rodolfo. "Zorzi Trombetta and the Band of *Piffari* and Trombones of the *Serenissima*: New Documentary Evidence." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 59-82.

An expanded and revised version appears as "Zorzi Trombetta e il complesso di piffari e tromboni della Serenissima: per una storia ‘qualitativa’ della musica strumentale del XV secolo," *Studi musicali* 31, no. 1 (2002): 57-87.

Bertoluzzi, Mario. "Bendinelli's *Entire Art of the Trumpet* of 1614: A Modern Edition." D.A. document, University of Northern Colorado, 2002. OCLC 51307980.

Bollinger, Blair, John Kitzman, and Paul Welcomer. "Waiting for Brahms—The Section Playing of Brahms' *Symphony No. 1*." *ITA Journal* 29, no. 1 (Winter 2001): 26- 29.

Brown, Howard Mayer, and Keith Polk. "Instrumental Music, c.1300-c.1520. I: Instrumentalists; II: Musical Sources and Performance; III: Instruments: Their Groupings and their Repertoires." In *Music as Concept and Practice in the Late Middle Ages*, ed. Reinhard Strohm and Bonnie J. Blackburn, 97-161. *New Oxford History of Music* [2nd edn.], vol. III, pt. 1. Oxford & New York: Oxford University Press, 2001. ISBN 0198162057. OCLC 46909221, 51622583.

Bryan, Paul R. "Mozart's Use of Horns in B \flat and the Question of *Alto-Basso* in the Eighteenth Century." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 165-92.

Carter, Stewart. "The Salem Cornetts." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 279-308. On the two cornetti by Gütter in the Wachovia Museum, Winston-Salem, NC.

Cassone, Gabriele. *La tromba* [The trumpet]. *L'espressione della musica*, 3. Varese: Zecchini, 2002. ISBN 8887203121. OCLC 50927871.

Ceulemans, Anne-Emmanuelle. "Instruments Real and Imaginary: Aaron's Interpretation of Isidore and an Illustrated Copy of the *Toscanello*." *Early Music History* 21 (2002): 1-35.

Pietro Aaron's *Toscanello in musica* (1529) is based on Isidore of Seville's "De Musica" [ca. 600 AD]. He translates Isidore's *tuba* as *tromba* (trumpet).

Crosby, Brian. "Private Concerts on Land and Water: The Musical Activities of the Sharp Family, c.1750-c.1790." *Research Chronicle* [Royal Musical Association] 34 (2001) [entire issue, 119 pp.].

Mentions performers on the horn and serpent.

Danner, Phyllis. "John Philip Sousa: The Illinois Collection." *Journal of Band Research* 38, no. 2 (spring 2003): 44-63.

Davidson, Todd. "The Introduction of the High Trumpet into the Late-Nineteenth and Early-Twentieth Century Orchestra." D.M. document, Indiana University, 2002.

Davis, James A. "Regimental Bands and Morale in the American Civil War." *Journal of Band Research* 38, no. 2 (spring 2003): 1-21.

Dratwicky, Alexandre. "La réorganisation de l'orchestre de l'Opéra de Paris en 1799: De nouvelles perspectives pour le répertoire de l'institution" [The reorganization of the orchestra of the Opera de Paris in 1799: new perspectives on the institution's repertoire]. *Revue de musicologie* 88, no. 2 (2002): 297-325.

Includes material on the hornist Frédéric Duvernoy.

Drexel, Kurt. "Höfisches Musikleben in der Zeit vor Maximilian I" [Musical life at Court in the time before Maximilian I]. In *Musikgeschichte Tirols, Band 1: Von den Anfängen bis zur Frühen Neuzeit*, herausgegeben von Kurt Drexel und Monika Fink, 595-613. Schlern-Schriften, 315. Innsbruck: Universitätsverlag Wagner, 2001. ISBN 3703003480. OCLC 48972305.

Includes references to brass.

Dumoulin, Géry. "Cornets in the Brussels Musical Instrument Museum: A Survey and a Checklist of an Outstanding Collection." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 425-46.

_____. "A Look at the Evolution of the Valved Cornet and its Repertoire. II: The Collection of Cornets at the Musical Instrument Museum (MIM), Brussels = Abriss über Entwicklung und Literatur des Kornetts. II: Die Kornettsammlung des Musikinstrumentenmuseums (MIM) in Brüssel = Aperçu sur l'évolution et le répertoire du cornet à pistons. II: La collection des cornets à pistons du Musée des instruments de musique (MIM) de Bruxelles." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 119 (2002): 32- 41.

The first part appeared in no. 118 (2002): 40- 49.

_____. "A Look at the Evolution of the Valved Cornet and its Repertoire. III: The Virtuosi and the Repertoire of the Cornet = Abriss über Entwicklung und Literatur des Kornetts. III: Literatur und Virtuosen des Kornetts = Aperçu sur l'évolution et le répertoire du cornet à pistons. III: Le répertoire du cornet à pistons et ses virtuoses." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 120 (2002): 56-62.

Eldridge, Niles. "A Brief History of Piston-Valved Cornets." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 337-90.

Engelke, Luis C. "Bandinelli and Fantini: The First Two Trumpet Methods Revisited." *NACWPI Journal* 51, no. 1 (Fall 2002): 21-27.

Gale, Michael. "Remnants of Some Late Sixteenth-Century Trumpet Ensemble Music." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 115-31.

Garcin-Marrou, Michel. "The Ascending Valve System in France: A Technical and Historical Approach. Part II." *The Horn Call* 33, no. 1 (October 2002): 45-50.

Said to be translated from *La revue du corniste* 75 (1998): 20-31. The first part appeared in 32, no. 2 (February 2002): 39-44.

Habla, Bernhard. "Die 'Post' im gedruckten Repertoire für Blasmusik seit dem 19. Jahrhundert" [The "post" in the printed band repertoire since the 19th century]. *Pannonische Forschungsstelle Oberschützen: Arbeitsberichte-Mitteilungen*, no. 12 (September 2001): 189- 201.

A report on the symposium Musik und Post, held 11-14 November 1999.

Hardie, Daniel. *The Loudest Trumpet: Buddy Bolden and the Early History of Jazz*. San José: toExcel, 2001. ISBN 1583486070. OCLC 48858645.

Haynes, Bruce. *A History of Performing Pitch: The Story of "A."* Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2002. ISBN 081841851. OCLC 50003956.

Includes a number of references to cornetts, sackbuts, and trumpets.

Howe, Timothy E. "Developing a Historical Model for Trombone Performance Practice in German and Austrian Orchestral Works from the Period 1785-1830." D.M.A. document, University of Nebraska-Lincoln, 2002. OCLC 51464050.

Kendrick, Robert L. *The Sounds of Milan, 1585-1650*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2002. ISBN 0195135377. OCLC 47443819.

A little on brass musicians in passing.

Klaus, Sabine K. "More Thoughts on the Discipline of Organology." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 1-10.

With examples from the brass world.

Koehler, Elisa. "In Search of Hummel: Perspectives on the Trumpet Concerto of 1803." *ITG Journal* 27, no. 2 (January 2003): 7-17.

Koter, Darja. *Glasbilarstvo na Slovenskem* [Instrument-making in Slovenia]. Maribor, Slovenia: Obzorja, 2001. ISBN 9612302286.

Mentions the brass maker Anton Rihar-Boštjanček (mid-nineteenth century).

Kreitner, Kenneth. "The Cathedral Band of León in 1548, and When It Played." *Early Music* 31, no. 1 (February 2003): 41-62.

Leach, Catherine F. "The Obbligato Trumpet Arias with Bass Voice by Johann Sebastian Bach and George Frederick Handel: Analysis of Selected Arias, Comparison of Styles, and Reasons for Stylistic Differences." D.M. document, Northwestern University, 2002. OCLC 48652983.

Mathez, Jean-Pierre. "Niklas Eklund: Ambassador for the Historical Trumpet = Niklas Eklund: Botschafter der alten Trompete = Niklas Eklund: Messenger de la trompette ancienne." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 120 (2002): 82-89.

McGrattan, Alexander. "The Trumpet in Restoration Theatre Suites." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 133-64.

The Medieval European Stage, 500-1550. Edited by William Tydeman; associate editors, Michael J. Anderson, Nick Davis, Louise M. Haywood, Peter Meredith, Lynette R. Muir, Thomas Pettitt, Leif Søndergaard, Elsa Strietman, and John E. Tailby. Theatre in Europe: A Documentary History. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2001. ISBN 0521246091. OCLC 45460947.

Includes references to trumpeters and other musicians.

Melton, William. "Greetings from Heaven, or Demonic Noise? A History of the Wagner Tuba. Part 5: The Disciple." *The Horn Call* 33, no. 2 (February 2003): 55-67.

The first four parts appeared in 31, no. 4 (August 2001): 49-58; 32, no. 1 (November 2001): 37-43; 32, no. 2 (February 2002): 55-62; and 32, no. 3 (May 2002): 43-53.

Miller, Malcolm. "The Shofar and its Symbolism." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 83-113.

Mulcahy, Michael. "Mozart's *Tuba mirum* Revisited." *ITA Journal* 29, no. 1 (Winter 2001): 24-26.

Myers, Arnold. "Brasswind Innovation and Output of Boosey & Co. in the Blaikley Era." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 391-423.

Polk, Keith. "Instrumentalists and Performance Practices in Dance Music, c. 1500." In *Improvisation in the Arts of the Middle Ages and Renaissance*, ed. Timothy McGee, 98-114. Early Drama, Art, and Music Monograph Series, 30. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, Western Michigan University, 2003. ISBN 1580440444 (hardback), 1580440452 (paperback). OCLC 50643774.

_____. "Instrumenten en muzikanten in een middeleeuwse stad" [Instruments and musicians in a medieval town]. In *Een muziekgeschiedenis der Nederlanden*, ed. Louis Peter Grijp and Ignace Bossuyt, 37-43. Amsterdam: Amsterdam University Press/Salomé, 2001. ISBN 9053564888 (Netherlands), 9028930000 (Belgium). OCLC 50575277.

_____. "Musik am Hof Maximilians I" [Music at the Court of Maximilian I]. In *Musikgeschichte Tirols*, Band 1: *Von den Anfängen bis zur Frühen Neuzeit*, herausgegeben von Kurt Drexel und Monika Fink, 630-51. Schlern-Schriften, 315. Innsbruck: Universitätsverlag Wagner, 2001. ISBN 3703003480. OCLC 48972305.

Includes references to brass.

Posvaliuk, Valery. *The Trumpeters of Kiev, Past and Present: [Historico-]Biographic[al] Publication*. 2nd, special edn. Transl. Anna Melnychuk. Ed. Joyce Davis and Edward H. Tarr. Kiev: Rylsky Institute of Art Studies, Folklore and Ethnology of th[e] National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine; Ukrainian Guild of Professional Trumpeters, 2000. ISBN 9669574102.

In Russian and English. 1st edn., 1998.

Rampe, Siegbert, and Dominik Sackmann, ed. *Bachs Orchestermusik: Entstehung, Klangwelt, Interpretation: ein Handbuch* [Bach's orchestra music: genesis, sound world, interpretation: a handbook]. Kassel: Bärenreiter, 2000. ISBN 3761813457. OCLC 44937058.

Includes articles on Bach's orchestra, orchestral repertoire, performance practice, and instruments ("Trompete" by Ulrich Prinz, pp. 287-88, and "Horn" by Ruth Funke, pp. 290-91).

Salmen, Walter. "The Status of Brass Musicians as Dance Musicians in the Sixteenth to Eighteenth Centuries." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 193-213.

Schüssele, Franz. *Alphorn und Hirtenhorn in Europa: Hölzerne Hörner von der Schweiz bis nach Schweden, von Russland bis Rumänien, in Geschichte und Gegenwart*. Buchloe: Obermayer; Friesenheim: Gälfiäßler, 2000. ISBN 3927781215 (3927781223 with CD).

Shifrin, Ken. "The Solo Trombone of the Bohemian Baroque = Die Soloposaune im böhmischen Barock = Le trombone en solo du baroque bohémien." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 119 (2002): 58-67; no. 120 (2002): 48-53; no. 121 (2003): 56-64 (third part bears the sole title "The Moravian Brotherhood Trombone Choirs: Neither Moravian Nor Choirs = Die Bruderschaft der mährischen Posaunenchor: weder mährisch, noch 'Chöre' = La confrérie des 'choeurs' de trombones moraves: ni moraves, ni 'choeurs'").

Sluchin, Benny. "The Venomous Affair of the First Serpent Method." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 309-35.

Stradner, Gerhard. "Musical Instruments in an Inventory by Andrea Mantova Benavides, Padua 1696." *Galpin Society Journal* 55 (2002): 62-103.

Includes trombones (apparently erroneously) and cornetti. The instruments listed in the inventory have ended up in the Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna.

Tarr, Edward H. "Bach and the Others: Eighteenth-Century Trumpeter-Hornists = Bach und die Anderen: Trompeter-Hornisten im 18. Jahrhundert = Bach et les autres: Trompettistes-cornistes du XVII^e-siècle." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 119 (2002): 44-55; no. 120 (2002): 38-47.

_____. "Slide Trumpet (Short Model) in D ($a^1 = 450$ Hz) by Charles Pace, London c.1840." Historical Instrument Window. *ITG Journal* 27, no. 1 (October 2002): 66.

Tuckwell, Barry. *Horn*. New edn. Yehudi Menuhin Music Guides. London: Kahn & Averill, 2002. ISBN 1871082420. OCLC 50588516, 50654046.

"The Unpublished Horn File. . . = Unveröffentlichtes zum Thema Horn. . . = Les impubliés du cor. . ." *Brass Bulletin*, no. 121 (2003): 66-69.

Includes a summary of an article by Uwe Bartels on the Baroque hunting horn that was submitted for publication in the magazine in 1992 but never published.

Vickers, Steve, ed. *A History of Drum & Bugle Corps*. Madison, WI: Drum Corps Sights and Sounds, 2002. OCLC 50171582.

Includes "The Evolution of the Bugle" by Scooter Pirtle.

Viola, Stefano. "Stellio Calvetti: Clever Inventor = Stellio Calvetti: geschickter Erfinder = Stellio Calvetti: ingénieux inventeur." *Brass Bulletin* no. 121 (2003): 114-16.

Includes a photograph of a copy of a Baroque trombone made by Calvetti.

Warnock, Emery C. "Mormon Martial and Brass Bands of the Utah Territory." *Journal of Band Research* 38, no. 1 (Fall 2002): 71-91.

Wegman, Rob C. "The Minstrel School in the Late Middle Ages." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 11-30.

Weiner, Howard. "Beethoven's Equali (WoO 30): A New Perspective." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 215-77.

Woodhouse, Harry. "The Serpent, and its Use in Rural Church Bands." *The Consort: The Journal of the Dolmetsch Foundation* 58 (summer 2002): 67-76.

Ziolkowski, John. "The Roman *Bucina*: A Distinct Musical Instrument?" *Historic Brass Society Journal* 14 (2002): 31-58.

Corrected entry from the last bibliography:

Pinksterboer, Hugo. *The Rough Guide to Trumpet & Trombone, Flugelhorn & Cornet*. Rough Guides: The Essential Tipbook. London: Rough Guides, 2001 (c2000). ISBN: 1858287545. OCLC 46394373, 47837059. *Tipbook: Trumpet & Trombone, Flugelhorn & Cornet*. The Netherlands: Tipbook Co., 2001. ISBN 9076192413. OCLC 49827378.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); <http://www.umi.com/hp/Products/Dissertations.html>. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. A second edition of his book The Recorder: A Research and Information Guide (with Richard Griscom) was published by Routledge, New York, in March 2003.

Bibliography of Writings about Historic Brass Instruments, 2004–05

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between May 2004 and April 2005. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Alberola i Verdú, Josep Antoni. "La trompa en Valencia (Introducción, uso y desarrollo) = The Horn in Valencia (Introduction, Use and Development)." *The Horn Call* 34, no. 1 (October 2003): 53–58.

Albrecht, Theodore. "A Case of Mistaken Gender: The Hornist Camillo Bellonci (1781–?)." *The Horn Call* 34, no. 2 (February 2004): 107–08.

_____. "Benedict Fuchs, Franz Eisen, and Michael Herbst: the Hornists in Beethoven's Eroica Symphony at its First Performances in Vienna, 1805–1809." *The Horn Call* 34, no. 1 (October 2003): 39–49.

Bacon, Louise. "The Pace Family of Musical Instrument Makers, 1788–1901." *The Galpin Society Journal* 57 (2004): 117–26.

Bonnell, Bruce. "The Quintet for Horn, Violin, Two Violas and Cello, K. 407 by Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart: Analytical Techniques and the Interpretation of the Work for the Natural Horn." D.M. document, Indiana University, 2003. OCLC 55143529.

Brown, A. Peter. "Eighteenth-century Traditions and Mozart's 'Jupiter' Symphony K.551." *The Journal of Musicology* 20, no. 2 (Spring 2003): 157–95.

Includes information on Mozart's exposure to the Viennese C-major trumpet symphony tradition.

Bugle Resounding: Music and Musicians of the Civil War Era. Ed. Bruce C. Kelley and Mark A. Snell. Columbia: University of Missouri Press, 2004. ISBN 0826215386. OCLC 55085762.

Principally papers presented at the National Conference on Music of the Civil War Era in 2001 and 2002. Includes, among other papers, Bruce C. Kelley, "'Old Times They are not Forgotten': An Overview of Music of the Civil War Era" (pp. 1–36); Richard C. Spicer, "'An Inspiration to All': New Hampshire's Third Regiment and Hilton Head Post Bands in Civil War South Carolina" (pp. 71–105); Walter L. Powell, "Henry Clay Work: 'The Silver Horn' as Civil War Elegy" (pp. 119–32); and Eric A. Campbell, "Civil War Music and the Common Soldier: The Experiences of Charles Wellington Reed" (pp. 202–28).

Burt, Jack. "The Rotary Trumpet: An Introduction." *ITG Journal* 28, no. 3 (March 2004): 52–55.

Campbell, Murray, Clive Greated, and Arnold Myers. *Musical Instruments: History, Technology, and Performance of Instruments of Western Music*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004. ISBN 0198165048. OCLC 56331965.

Includes sections on "Bugles and Horns" (pp. 149–86) and "Trumpets and Trombones" (pp. 187–205).

Chollet, Fabrice. "Le jeune pâtre breton, mélodie avec cor d'Hector Berlioz = *Le jeune pâtre breton*: Melody with horn by Hector Berlioz." *The Horn Call* 35, no. 2 (February 2005): 95–100.

Clawson, Lucas R. "'Fast' Days: The Salem Band and the Twenty-sixth North Carolina Regiment." In Mariam Cannon Hayes School of Music [Appalachian State University, Boone, NC] Brass Chamber Music Forum, October 21–23, 2004, program book, 103–10.

Collins, Timothy A. "*Hora decima*: The Musical Theology of the *Stadtpfeifer*." *Cross Accent* 10, no. 3 (2002): 27–38.

_____. "The Stadtpfeifer of Germany: Their History, Professional Status, Instruments and Music." D.M.A. document, Case Western Reserve University, 2001.

Cools, Jacques. "Victor–Charles Mahillon à l'Exposition des Arts industriels de Bruxelles de 1874 [Victor–Charles Mahillon at the exhibition of industrial arts of Brussels in

1874].” *Larigot: Bulletin de l’Association des Collectionneurs d’Instruments à Vent*, no. 33 (June 2004):17–20.

Cottrell, Jeffrey. “An Examination in Regard to [*sic*] Ornamentation Practice of Late Nineteenth and Early Twentieth-Century Brass Performance.” *ITEA Journal* 32, no. 1 (Fall 2004): 73–77.

Creux, Fulvio. “Founders of the Italian Band Movement.” *Journal of Band Research* 40, no. 2 (Spring 2005): 20–42.

Diprose, Mike. “Partial Success: Natural Trumpet—The March Forward.” *Early Music Review*, no. 105 (February 2005): 9–10.

Dudgeon, Ralph T. *The Keyed Bugle*. 2nd ed. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2004. ISBN 0810826453. OCLC 55671382.

Dullat, Günter. *Holzblasinstrumente und Metallblasinstrumente auf Auktionen 1981-2002* [Woodwind and brasswind instruments at auctions, 1981–2002]. Plau am See, Germany: author, 2003. OCLC 52774923.

Gleason, B.P. “Horse-mounted Military Musicians: an Overview.” *Journal of Band Research* 39 (Fall 2003): 1–34.

Hegeman, Doug. “A Chronology of Pedagogical Material for Horn Prior to 1900.” *The Horn Call* 35, no. 1 (October 2004): 41–45.

Hostiou, Volny. “Le serpent d’église en France, de son apparition à la révolution [The serpent in France, from its advent to the Revolution].” Thesis, Université de Paris IV, 2004.

Kälin, Walter, ed. “Pater Athanasius Tschopp (1827): Ansicht einer Verbeßerung des Hornes [Father Athanasius Tschopp (1827): View of an improvement to the horn].” *Glareana: Nachrichten der Gesellschaft der Freunde alter Musikinstrumente* 13 (2001): 18–21.

Kampmann, Bruno. “A propos de quelques instruments à vent de la collection Patrick Delile [About some wind instruments in the Patrick Delile collection].” *Larigot: Bulletin de l’Association des Collectionneurs d’Instruments à Vent*, no. 33 (June 2004): 8–13.

Discusses two cornets, two trumpets, two bugles, a piccolo trumpet, and a post horn dating from 1840 to 1950.

_____. “Redecouverte d’une trompette historique [Rediscovery of a historical trumpet].” *Larigot: Bulletin de l’Association des Collectionneurs d’Instruments à Vent*, no. 31 (June 2003): 4.

Klaus, Sabine K. "Found in the Sunny South ...: A Trumpet by Johann Carl Kodisch, Imperial City of Nuremberg, after 1681." *National Music Museum Newsletter* 32, no.1 (February 2005): 4–5.

_____. "Keyed Trumpet in G by Eduard Johann Bauer." *ITG Journal* 29, no. 1 (October 2004): 57.

_____. "The Utley Collection: New Jewels Include a Rare Keyed Trumpet by E.J. Bauer, Prague." *National Music Museum Newsletter* 31, no.1 (February 2004): 1–2.

_____. "William Lander (1763–1843), Mere, Wiltshire: a Forgotten Musical Instrument Maker Rediscovered." *The Galpin Society Journal* 57 (2004): 3–18.

Lawergren, Bo. "Oxus Trumpets, ca. 2200–1800 BCE: Material Overview, Usage, Societal Role, and Catalog." *Iranica antiqua* 38 (2003): 41–118.

Melton, William. "Greetings from Heaven, or Demonic Noise? A History of the Wagner Tuba. Part 5: The Disciple." *The Horn Call* 33, no. 2 (February 2003): 55–67. "Part 6: Wagner's Heirs," 33, no. 3 (May 2003): 49–62. "Part 7: Modern Voices," 34, no. 2 (February 2004): 43–50. "Part 8: Revival," 34, no. 3 (May 2004): 43–52.

"*Méthode de cornet à pistons* Carnaud fils aîné." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 33 (June 2004): 21–25.
Facsimile excerpts.

Niwa, Seishiro. "'Madama' Margaret of Parma's Patronage of Music." *Early Music* 33, no. 1 (February 2005): 25–37.
Mentions players of the cornetto and trombone.

Olson, Greta J. "Angel Musicians, Instruments and Late-Sixteenth-Century Valencia (Spain)." *Music in Art* 27 (2002): 46–67.

Pasler, Jann. "The Utility of Musical Instruments in the Racial and Colonial Agendas of Late Nineteenth-Century France." *Journal of the Royal Musical Association* 129, no. 1 (2004): 24–76.

Ponchielli e la musica per banda: Atti della Tavola Rotonda ridotto del teatro Ponchielli, 27 Aprile 2001 [Ponchielli and band music: proceedings of the round table held at the Teatro Ponchielli, 27 April 2001], a cura di Licia Sirch. Pisa: Edizioni ETS, 2005. ISBN 8846708598.

Includes: Licia Sirch, “Ponchielli e la musica per banda. Introduzione [Ponchielli and band music: introduction]” (pp. 12–34); Annelly Zeni, “Inni e marce: il ritmo delle idee nella musica per banda di Amilcare Ponchielli [Anthems and marches: the succession of ideas in the band music of Amilcare Ponchielli]” (pp. 35–48); Antonio Carlini, “Amilcare Ponchielli e le opere concertistiche per tromba e cornetta nelle tradizioni bandistiche italiane del XIX secolo [Amilcare Ponchielli and his concert works for trumpet and cornet in the Italian band tradition of the nineteenth century]” (pp. 49–118); Pietro Zappalà, “I ballabili per banda di Amilcare Ponchielli [The dance music for band by Amilcare Ponchielli]” (pp. 119–48); Licia Sirch, “Trascrizioni, pot-pourri, fantasie, ricordanze di brani d’opera. Aspetti drammaturgici e formali [Transcriptions, potpourris, fantasies, reminiscences of opera excerpts: dramaturgic and formal aspects]” (pp. 149–84); Marco Mangani, “Tono lirico e *topos* elegiaco: la ‘triste rimembranza’ di Amilcare Ponchielli [Lyrical manner and elegiac topos: the ‘sad remembrance’ of Amilcare Ponchielli]” (pp. 185–232); Henry Howey, “Death in Cremona. Ponchielli’s Funeral Marches for Band” (pp. 233–54); Marco Ruggeri, “Banda e organo nell’Ottocento lombardo–veneto [Band and organ in the Lombardy and Veneto in the nineteenth century]” (pp. 291–330); Renato Meucci, “Un caso organologico: l’identificazione della tromba e della cornetta [An organological case: the identification of the trumpet and cornet]” (pp. 331–54); and Raffaella Barbierato, “I manoscritti ponchielliani nella Biblioteca Statale di Cremona: novità ed integrazioni [The Ponchielli manuscripts in the state library of Cremona: news and updates]” (pp. 355–436).

Rauline, Jean–Yves. “19th-century Amateur Music Societies in France and the Changes of Instrument Construction: their Evolution Caught between Passivity and Progress.” *The Galpin Society Journal* 57 (2004): 236–45.

Rognoni, Riccardo. *Passaggi per potersi esercitare nel diminuire*. Prefazione di = Preface and translations by Bruce Dickey. Bibliotheca musica bononiensis; Collana fondata e diretta da Giuseppe Vecchi; Sezione II N. 154. [Bologna]: Arnaldo Forni Editore, 2002. OCLC 50281596.

Saint-Arroman, Jean, ed. *Cor: Méthodes, traités, dictionnaires et encyclopédies, ouvrages généraux* [Horn: methods, treatises, dictionaries and encyclopedias, general works]. Méthodes & traités, 21. Série I. France 1600–1800. Courlay, France: J. M. Fuzeau, 2003. ISMN M230658799. OCLC 54509600.

A collection of facsimiles. (1) Excerpts from Marin Mersenne, *Harmonie universelle* (1636); Pierre Trichet, “Traité des instruments” (ca. 1640); Jean Serre de Rieux, *Les dons des enfans de Latone: la musique et la chasse du Cerf* (1734); Diderot and d’Alembert, *Encyclopédie* (1751–52); Ancelet, *Observations sur la musique, les musiciens, et les instrumens* (1757); François-Alexandre-Pierre de Garsault, *Notionnaire, ou mémorial raisonné* (1761); Valentin Roeser, *Essai d’instruction à l’usage de ceux qui composent pour la clarinette et le cor* (1764); Louis Joseph Francoeur, *Diapason général de tous les instrumens à vent* (1772); Jean-Benjamin de Laborde, *Essai sur la musique ancienne et moderne* (1780); *Encyclopédie*

méthodique (1788); Othon-Joseph Vandenbroek [Vandenbroek], *Traité général de tous les instrumens à vent* (ca. 1793). (2) the complete texts of Vandenbroek, *Méthode nouvelle et raisonnée pour apprendre à donner du cor* (ca. 1797); Anton-Joseph Hampel and Jan Václav Stich, *Seule et vraie méthode pour apprendre facilement les élémens des premier et second cors* (ca. 1798). Vandenbroek, *Suite de la Méthode ou manière d'enseigner à donner du cor* (ms., n.d.).

Smith, Brian F. *Bandstands to Battlefields: Brass Bands in 19th Century America*. Gansevoort, NY: Corner House Historical Publications, 2004. ISBN 0879281383. OCLC 58802749.

Tarr, Edward H. *East Meets West: The Russian Trumpet Tradition from the Time of Peter the Great to the October Revolution, with a Lexicon of Trumpeters Active in Russia from the Seventeenth Century to the Twentieth*. Bucina: The Historic Brass Society Series, 4. Hillsdale, NY: Pendragon Press, 2003. ISBN 1576470288. OCLC 43790246.

Verdié, Jean Claude. "Du saxhorn alto au cor d'harmonie: les succédanés de cor... [From the alto saxhorn to the (orchestral) horn: alternatives to the horn]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 34 (October 2004): 4–9.

_____. "Evolution du cor d'harmonie en France de 1760 à 1960 [Evolution of the horn in France from 1760 to 1960]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 31 (June 2003): 5–11.

_____. "Histoire d'un cor d'harmonie [Story of a horn]." *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 33 (June 2004): 6–7.

Discusses a natural horn by Marcel Auguste Raoux that was modified by Antoine Courtois as a concert horn in F.

Wackernagel, Bettina. *Musikinstrumentenverzeichnis der Bayerischen Hofkapelle von 1655: Faksimile, Transkription und Kommentar* [Musical instrument inventory of the Bavarian Court Chapel from 1655: facsimile, transcription, and commentary]. Veröffentlichungen der Gesellschaft für Bayerische Musikgeschichte. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 2003. ISBN 3795211379. OCLC 53442944.

The inventory includes cornetti and trombones.

Ward, A. J. "Strike Up the Band: Two Centuries of Music in Dunstable and District." *Memory Lane*, no. 141 (Winter 2003): 39.

Wertheim, Margaret. "Bursts of Cornets and Evolution Bring Harmony to Night and Day: Scientist at Work, Niles Eldredge." *New York Times*, 9 March 2004, F3.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521-3042); <http://www.umi.com/hp/Products/Dissertations.html>. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

Brass Bulletin announced its demise at the end of the 2003 volume. See "Editorial," no. 123 (2003): 7-11.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. A second edition of his book The Recorder: A Research and Information Guide (with Richard Griscom) was published by Routledge, New York, in 2003. He is currently writing a book on the New Orleans jazz group Astral Project and a history of the recorder for Yale University Press.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 2005–2006

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between May 2005 and June 2006. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Albrecht, Theodore. "The Musicians in Balthasar Wigand's Depiction of the Performance of Haydn's *Die Schöpfung*, Vienna, 27 March 1808." *Music in Art* 29, no. 1–2 (spring–fall 2004): 123–33.

Ataeva, Djennet. "The Iconography of Musical Instruments in St. Petersburg's Monumental and Decorative Sculpture." *Music in Art* 29, nos. 1–2 (spring–fall 2004): 227–33.

Baldwin, David. "Notes on J. B. Arban's *The Art of Phrasing*." *ITG Journal* 29, no. 2 (January 2005): 49–51, 63.

Beller–McKenna, Daniel. "Distance and Disembodiment: Harps, Horns, and the Requiem Idea in Schumann and Brahms." *Journal of Musicology* 22, no. 1 (winter 2005): 47–89.

Bevan, Clifford. "As Time Goes by." *ITEA Journal* 32, no. 4 (summer 2005): 74–75. Thoughts on changing instruments.

Blomster, Jennie, Thomas Hiebert, and Trevor Reid. "Selected Resources for the Classical Hand Horn: An Annotated Bibliography." *The Horn Call* 36, no. 2 (February 2006): 88–92.

The resources in question are books, articles, methods, and music.

Bonime, Stephen. "Music for the Royal *Entrée* into Paris, 1483–1517." In *Liber amicorum Isabelle Cazeaux: Symbols, Parallels and Discoveries in her Honor*, ed. Paul–André Bempéchat, 305–20. Festschrift Series, no. 19. Hillsdale, NY: Pendragon Press, 2005. ISBN 1576470911. OCLC 56591557.

Bornhoft, Rudiger. "Anton Bruckners Siebente Symphonie und die Kontrabasstuba" [Anton Bruckner's Seventh Symphony and the contrabass tuba]. *Studien & Berichte: Mitteilungsblatt der Internationalen Bruckner–Gesellschaft* 63 (2004): 5–12.

Brekke, Jeremy. "The Forgotten Trumpet: a Historical Examination of the Low F Valve Trumpet." D.A. document, University of Northern Colorado, 2004. OCLC 60594082.

Brooks, Jeanice. "From Minstrel to Courtier—The Royal *Musique de chambre* and Courtly Ideals in Sixteenth-Century France." In *Musikalischer Alltag im 15. und 16. Jahrhundert* [Everyday musical life in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries], herausgegeben von Nicole Schwindt, 39–49. *Trossinger Jahrbuch für Renaissancemusik*, I. Kassel: Bärenreiter, 2001. OCLC 50965474.

Collins, Timothy A. "*Musica secreta strumentali*: the Aesthetics and Practice of Private Solo Instrumental Performance in the Age of Monody (ca. 1580–ca. 1610)." *International Review of the Aesthetics and Sociology of Music* 35, no. 1 (June 2004): 47–62.

Cools, Jacques. "A propos des cylindres droits ou pistons dits 'belges'" [On upright cylinders, also called "Belgian" pistons]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 36 (October 2005): 12–20.

Curtis, Stanley Howard. "Monteverdi's Symbolic Use of the Cornett." D.M. document, Indiana University, 2005. OCLC 64715689.

Dorschel, Andreas. "Was heißt *konservativ* in der Kunst? Das Horn im 19. Jahrhundert und das Es-Dur-Trio Op. 40 von Johannes Brahms: eine ästhetische Fallstudie" [What does "conservative" mean in the arts? The horn in the nineteenth century and the Eb-Major Trio, op. 40, of Johannes Brahms: an aesthetic case study]. *Brahms–Studien* 14 (2005): 55–66.

Dumoulin, Géry. "The Cornet and Other Brass Instruments in French Patents of the First Half of the Nineteenth Century." *Galpin Society Journal* 59 (2006): 77–100.

Ecker, Heinz. "Die Harmoniemusik von Franz Krommer (1759–1831) unter besonderer Berücksichtigung ihrer Besetzung und Bearbeitung" [The *harmonie* music of Franz Krommer (1759–1831) with special consideration of its scoring and arrangement]. *Tibia* 29, no. 1 (2004): 15–24.

Eliason, Robert E. "Bugles beyond Compare: The Presentation E-flat Keyed Bugle in Mid-nineteenth-century America." *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 31 (2005): 67–132.

_____. "More on Echo-Cornets." *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 30 (2004): 193–96.

Fritsch, Philippe, and David Maillot. "The Saxhorn in France from 1843 to the Present Day." *ITEA Journal* 31, no. 3 (spring 2004): 68–70.

Giron, Caroline. "Une collection perdue: Les instruments de l'ospedale dei Mendicanti à Venise" [A lost collection: the instruments of the Ospedale dei Mendicanti in Venice]. *Musique, images, instruments: Revue française d'organologie et d'iconographie musicale*, no. 8 (2006): 104–24.

Gardner, Randy C. "Performance Considerations of the Second Horn Role in Selected Works by Haydn, Mozart, and Beethoven." *The Horn Call* 35, no. 3 (May 2005): 72–74.

Habla, Bernhard. "Harmoniemusik und Blasorchester spielen Mozart: Entwicklung des Notenangebotes unter besonderer Berücksichtigung gedruckter Notenausgaben" [*Harmonie* ensembles and wind bands play Mozart: the development of edition availability, with special consideration of printed editions]. *Pannonische Forschungsstelle Oberschützen: Arbeitsberichte—Mitteilungen*, no. 16 (October 2005): 5–48.

Herbert, Trevor. "Selling Brass Instruments: The Commercial Imaging of Brass Instruments (1830–1930) and its Cultural Messages." *Music in Art* 29, no. 1–2 (spring–fall 2004): 213–26.

_____. *The Trombone*. The Yale Musical Instrument Series. New Haven & London: Yale University Press, 2006. ISBN 0300100957. OCLC 62225136.

Hostiou, Volny. "Le serpent dans les églises françaises: Parcours historique et iconographique" [The serpent in French churches: a historical and iconographic overview]. *Musique*,

images, instruments: Revue française d'organologie et d'iconographie musicale, no. 8 (2006): 138–52.

Jerold, Beverly. "Bach's Lament about Leipzig's Professional Instrumentalists." *Bach: The Journal of the Riemenschneider Bach Institute* 36, no. 1 (2005): 67–96.

Jones, Frances. "The Alphorn: Revival of an Ancient Instrument." *The Consort: The Journal of the Dolmetsch Foundation* 62 (summer 2006): 40–62.

Kampmann, Bruno. "Catalogue de la collection d'instruments de musique à vent, tome 5: sommaire" [Catalogue of the collection of wind instruments, vol. 5: summary]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, numéro spécial no. XVIII (February 2006): 1–146 (whole issue).

_____. "Catalogue de vente J. R. Laffeur & Son: List No. 22—15 Green Street, Leicester Square, London W.C." [Sale catalogue of J. R. Laffeur & Son: List No. 22: 15 Green Street, Leicester Square, London W.C.]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 36 (October 2005): 21–31.

_____. introduction. "Méthode de cornet à trois pistons de Cornette" [Cornette's method for three-valved cornet]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 35 (June 2005): 29–31.

Keim, Friedel. *Das große Buch der Trompete: Instrument, Geschichte, Trompeterlexikon* [The big book of the trumpet: instrument, history, trumpet lexicon]. Mainz: Schott, 2005. ISBN 3795705304. OCLC 61488096.

Kelly, Daniel. "The Competition Solos of J.B. Arban." *ITG Journal* 30, no. 3 (March 2006): 17–28.

Klaus, Sabine K. "Cornoepen by Thomas Key in B-flat." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 29, no. 3 (March 2005): 50.

_____. "Henry Courtenay (1820–1881) of Alton: his Life, his Cornoepen, and Further Thoughts on the 'Clapper Shake Key'." *Galpin Society Journal* 59 (2006): 101–15.

_____. "Over-the-shoulder Cornet in E-flat (a' = 440 Hz) by Elbridge G. Wright, Boston, ca. 1850." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 30, no. 4 (June 2006): 41.

_____. "Serpent[s] of Wood and Metal." *Historical Instrument Section. ITEA Journal* 33, no. 1 (fall 2005): 82–84.

_____. "Trumpet in B-flat ($a^1 = 468$ Hz) by Andreas Barth." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 29, no. 4 (June 2005): 63.

_____. "Trumpet with Six Independent Valves and Tubes in F by Adolphe Sax, Paris, 1868." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 30, no. 2 (January 2006): 40.

Koehler, Elisa. "A Trumpeter's Guide to the Cornett." *ITG Journal* 30, no. 2 (January 2006): 14–25, 31.

Kongressberichte Bad Waltersdorf/Steiermark 2000, Lana/Südtirol 2002. Herausgegeben von Bernhard Habla. *Alta Musica*, 24. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 2003. ISBN 3795211271. OCLC 53258510.

Includes: Raoul F. Camus, "Arthur Pryor, der Paganini der Posaune" [Arthur Pryor, the Paganini of the trombone] (pp. 17–26); Keith Kinder, "Franz Liszt and Wilhelm Wieprecht: Glimpses into a Remarkable Relationship" (49–60); Paul Niemistö, "Finland's Brass Band Repertoire in the Autonomous Era" (75–96); Eva Vičarovà, "Militärmusik in Olomouc in den Jahren 1848 bis 1918 von dem Hintergrund der Entwicklung der Militärmusik in Österreich im 19. Jahrhundert" [Military music in Olomouc, 1848–1918, against the background of the development of military music in Austria in the nineteenth century] (113–40); Elisabeth Anzenberger–Ramminger, "Die Regimentsmusiken der Tiroler Kaiserjäger und ihre Kapellmeister von 1895 bis 1918" [The regimental ensembles of the Tyrolean Kaiserjäger and their directors from 1895 to 1918] (163–91); Friedrich Anzenberger, "Militärmusik im Umfeld von Joseph Lanner und Johann Strauss (Vater): Untersuchungen zur Entwicklung der Militärkapellen als 'Zivile' Unterhaltungsmusiken in Wien" [Military music in the milieu of Joseph Lanner and Joseph Strauss (father): investigations into the development of military bands as "civil" entertainment ensembles in Vienna] (193–214); John P. Boyd, "Ouverture für Harmoniemusik Op. 24 by Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy: An Edition for Contemporary Wind Band" (215–43); Helmut Brenner, "Impassioned Dream over the Waves: Juventino Rosas and the 'Bandas'" (245–61); Raoul F. Camus, "Early American Secular Music and its European Sources, 1589 to 1839: An Index" (261–82); Heinz Ecker, "Harmoniemusik: Versuch einer Begriffsbestimmung" [*Harmonie* music: essay of a definition] (283–305); Karl Heinrich Ehrenforth, "Richard Börner (1834–1900): Mehr als ein Schlesischer Musikmeister" [Richard Börner (1834–1900): more than a Silesian music master] (307–16); Zoltán Falvy, "Musikikonographie als Grundlagenforschung für Blasmusik" [Music iconography as basic research for wind music] (335–49); Anatoliy Mitev Gabrov, "Der Beitrag des Blasorchesters zur Entwicklung der bulgarischen Musik" [The contribution of the wind orchestra to the development of Bulgarian music] (351–57); Keith Kinder, "Richard Wagner and the Wind Band" (359–74); Kari Laitinen, "Military Bands and their Musicians in Eighteenth-Century Finland" (375–83); Paul Niemistö, "Finnish Brass Bands in Northern Minnesota" (415–28); Francis Pieters, "Nationalism in the Belgian Wind Band Music" (449–58); Helena Simonett, "Musikalische Spuren deutscher Einwanderer in Mexico: eine Rekonstruktion" [Musical footprints of German

immigrants in Mexico: a reconstruction] (469–87); Karl H. Vigl, “Einflüsse der ‘Musica di reggimento’ in der Etschländer Blasmusik” [Influences of the ‘Musica di reggimento’ in South Tyrolean wind music] (489–502).

Kridel, Craig, and Dick Fuller. “Serpent Exaltations: Pedagogical Advice from Past and Present.” Historical Instrument Section. *ITEA Journal* 32, no. 3 (spring 2005): 85–87.

Loss, Eglio. “Un flicorno pas comme les autres” [A saxhorn unlike the others]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 35 (June 2005): 12–13.

Discusses an 1893 military bugle by the Bottali firm of Milan.

McBeth, Amy Jo. “Jacques–François Gally: A Study of his Life and Selected Works for Accompanied Horn.” D.M.A. document, University of Iowa, 2005.

McGee, Timothy J. “Silver or Gold: The Color of Brass Instruments in the Late Middle Ages.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 17 (2005): 1–6.

Martin, Michael D. “The Strange Case of O.G. Farrar.” *Journal of Band Research* 40, no. 1 (fall 2004): 80–89.

Mit Drommeten und Pauken, Hörnern und Posaunen: Festschrift für Werner Benz zum 65. Geburtstag [With trumpets and kettledrums, horns and trombones: Festschrift for Werner Benz on his 65th birthday], im Auftrage der Gesellschaft zur Förderung der Religion/Umwelt–Forschung herausgegeben von Prof. Dr. Dr. Manfred Büttner und Dagmar Pesta. *Musicologica berolinensia: Texte und Abhandlungen zur historischen, systematischen und vergleichenden Musikwissenschaft*, 8. Berlin: Verlag Ernst Kuhn, 2001. ISBN 3928864823. OCLC 50387526.

Includes: Hermann Gehring, “Anfänge und Stand der Posaunenchöre im Hochstift Paderborn” [Beginnings and state of the trombone choirs in the bishopric of Paderborn] (pp. 169–83); Wolfgang Schnabel, “Zur wissenschaftlichen Aufarbeitung der Geschichte des Posaunenchorwesens” (185–208) [Towards a scholarly reappraisal of the history of the trombone choir] [reprinted from Manfred Büttner & Frank Richter, hrsg., *Beziehungen zwischen Religion (Geisteshaltung) und wissenschaftlicher Umwelt (Theologie, Naturwissenschaft und Musikwissenschaft)* (Frankfurt: P. Lang, 1999)]; Manfred Büttner, “Zur Geschichte der engen Blechblasinstrumente in der evangelischen Kirchenmusik (Teil 2): Von der Reformation bis zur Mitte des 18. Jahrhunderts” [On the history of narrow brass instruments in Evangelical church music (Part 2): from the Reformation to the middle of the eighteenth century] (209–20) [reprinted from *Clarino*, July/August 1996].

Moore, Brian. "The Rebirth of Haydn's Trumpet Concerto in England: Ernest Hall, George Eskdale, and the BBC." *ITG Journal* 30, no. 4 (June 2006): 26–29.

Musique ancienne—instruments et imagination: Actes des Rencontres Internationales harmoniques, Lausanne 2004 = *Music of the Past—Instruments and Imagination: Proceedings of the harmoniques International Congress, Lausanne 2004*, ed. Michael Latham. Publikationen der Schweizerischen Musikforschenden Gesellschaft = Publications de la Société Suisse de Musicologie, Serie II, Vol. 46. Bern & New York: Peter Lang, 2006. ISBN 0820483702 (New York); 3039109936 (Bern). OCLC 65207873.

Includes: Edward H. Tarr, "The 'Bach trumpet' in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries" (pp. 17–48); Thomas Müller, "Das Horn, oder die Hörner, in der Musik Johann Sebastian Bachs" [The horn, or the horns, in the music of Johann Sebastian Bach] (49–52); Lorenzo Ghirlanda, "Il trombone, prassi esecutiva ed articolazione del suono in riferimento all'iconografia e alla tradizione 'antica'" [The trombone: performance practice and articulation of the sound based on iconography and the "antique" tradition] (53–59); Ulrich Prinz, "Originale Bezeichnungen und Notationsweisen der Blechbläser in den Werken Johann Sebastian Bachs" [Original indications and manners of notation for brass instruments in the works of Johann Sebastian Bach] (61–92); Uwe Wolf, "Aus der Arbeit an der Bach-Studien-Ausgabe *Bach for Brass*: Probleme—Erfahrungen—Ausblicke" [Working on the Bach study edition *Bach for Brass*: problems, experiences, outlook] (93–107).

Myers, Arnold. "'Bailey's American Cornet' in C by Benjamin F. Richardson, Boston, circa 1860." Historical Instrument Window. *ITG Journal* 30, no. 1 (October 2005): 48.

_____. "Museums—What is it Worth?" Historical Instrument Section. *ITEA Journal* 33, no. 2 (winter 2006): 87.

Not the worth of museums, but the museum director's perspective on the monetary value of historical instruments.

_____. "Le spaghettiphone: un modèle expérimental de piston conçu par Blaikley" [The spaghettiphone: an experimental model of valve conceived by (David James) Blaikley]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 35 (June 2005): 14–16.

_____. and Niles Eldredge. "The Brasswind Production of Marthe Besson's London Factory." *Galpin Society Journal* 59 (2006): 43–75.

Myers, Herbert W. "Evidence of the Emerging Trombone in the late Fifteenth Century: What Iconography May Be Trying to Tell us." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 17 (2005): 7–35.

Niemistö, Paul. "The Finnish Immigrant Brass Bands on Minnesota's Iron Range." Ph.D. dissertation, University of Minnesota, 2004. OCLC 62701855, 68729733.

Orval, Francis. "Le cor et son evolution à travers les âges jusqu'à nos jours = The Horn and its Evolution through the Ages." *The Horn Call* 35, no. 3 (May 2005): 75–79.

Pastoureau, Michel. "Le son du cor dans l'image médiévale" [The sound of the horn in medieval imagery]. In *Les représentations de la musique au Moyen Age: actes du colloque des 2 et 3 avril 2004* [Depictions of music in the Middle Ages: proceedings of the colloquium of 2 and 3 April 2004], 92–99. Ed. Martine Clouzot and Christine Laloue. Les cahiers du Musée de la Musique, 6. Paris: Cité de la Musique, 2004. ISBN 2914147295. OCLC 63121865.

Pearn, John, and Christopher Gardner–Thorpe. "Tubular Branches, Additaments, Holes and Ventiges: William Close (1775–1813), Lake District Apothecary and Surgeon; and his Invention of Polyphonian Trumpets and French Horns." *Galpin Society Journal* 58 (2005): 38–45.

Picard, Jean–François. "Deux cors exceptionnels" [Two exceptional horns]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 35 (June 2005): 8–11.

Describes a concert horn by the Besson firm (Paris) from between 1845 and 1858, and another by Charles–Joseph Sax (Brussels) from between 1825 and 1830.

Rastall, Richard. "The Minstrels and Trumpeters of Edward IV: Some Further Thoughts." *Plainsong and Medieval Music* 13, no. 2 (October 2004): 163–69.

A reply to Helen Marsh Jeffries, "Job Descriptions, Nepotism, and Part-time Work: The Minstrels and Trumpeters of the Court of Edward IV of England (1461–83)," *ibid.*, 12 (2002): 165–77.

Rice, Albert R. "Curtis Janssen and a Selection of Outstanding Brasses at the Fiske Museum, the Claremont Colleges, California." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 17 (2005): 85–113.

_____. "T. Ryan' Identified, and an Echo Mute at the Fiske Museum." *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 30 (2004): 191–92.

See also Peter H. Bloom, "Thomas Ryan Identified," *ibid.*, 190.

Russell, Scott E. "The History and Pedagogy of Jacques–François Gally's Non-measured Preludes for Horn, Op. 27 Nos. 21–40." D.A. document, Ball State University, 2004. OCLC 57469525.

Schmidt, Paul. "Monstres in the Attic." *Serpent Newsletter*, 1 April 2006, 7–9.

_____. “Monstre Ophicleides.” *Serpent Newsletter*, 27 September 2005, 8–9.

Schnauber, Tom. “Beethoven’s Sonata in F: A Work Based on the Characteristics of the Natural Horn.” *The Horn Call* 36, no. 1 (October 2005): 51–56.

Sinder, Philip, and John Griffiths. “Richard Wagner’s (1813–1883) ‘Vorspiel,’ *Die Meistersinger von Nürnberg*.” Excerpt Etude. *ITEA Journal* 31, no. 2 (winter 2004): 54–59.

Spitzer, John, and Neal Zaslaw. *The Birth of the Orchestra: History of an Institution, 1650–1815*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004. ISBN 0198164343. OCLC 52485404 (hardback); 0195189558 (paperback).

Stephen, J. Drew. “Bach’s Horn Parts: Alternatives to Nodal Venting and Hand Stopping.” In *Irish Musical Studies 8: Bach Studies from Dublin. Selected Papers Presented at the Ninth Biennial Conference on Baroque Music, held at Trinity College Dublin from 12 to 16 July 2000*, ed. Anne Leahy and Yo Tomita, 149–60. Dublin: Four Courts Press, 2004. ISBN 1851828575. OCLC 55586623.

Tarr, Edward H. “Natural Trumpet in Pretzel Form in E.” *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 28, no. 4 (June 2004): 53.

_____. “Trumpet in F (a’ = 452 Hz) by James Keat.” *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 28, no. 1 (October 2003): 76.

Tielman Susato and the Music of his Time: Print Culture, Compositional Technique and Instrumental Music in the Renaissance. Ed. Keith Polk. Bucina: The Historic Brass Society Series, 5. Hillsdale, NY: Pendragon Press, 2005. ISBN 1576471063. OCLC 57452433.

Includes the following articles of particular relevance to brass instruments: Kristine K. Forney, “New Insights into the Career and Musical Contributions of Tielman Susato” (pp. 1–44); Keith Polk, “Susato and Instrumental Music in Flanders in the Sixteenth Century” (61–100); Bruno Bouckaert and Eugene Schreurs, “Hans Nagel, Performer and Spy in England and Flanders (ca. 1490–1531)” (101–15); Trevor Herbert, “Susato’s Colleagues: the Trombonists of the Tudor Court” (117–32); John Kmetz, “Blowing Your Horn in the New Economy, ca. 1550” (133–41); Polk, “Epilogue—Susato and the Repertory and Performance Practices of his Time” (191–99).

Tinnin, Randy. “J. S. Bach’s Cantata 51, *Jauchzet Gott in allen Landen*: Historical Observations and Insights for Modern Performance.” *ITG Journal* 30, no. 1 (October 2005): 34–38.

Tröster, Patrick. "More about Renaissance Slide Trumpets: Fact or Fiction?" *Early Music* 32, no. 2 (May 2004): 252–68.

Vallo, Victor, Jr. "The Natural Trumpet and the Baroque Oratorio." *The Consort: The Journal of the Dolmetsch Foundation* 61 (summer 2005): 18–29.

Verdié, Jean–Claude. "Le trombone alto" [The alto trombone]. *Larigot: Bulletin de l'Association des Collectionneurs d'Instruments à Vent*, no. 36 (October 2005): 6–11.

Wall, Howard, with Heidi Lucas. "The Importance of Subdivision in the Fourth Horn Part of the Overture to *Der Freis[c]hütz*." *The Horn Call* 35, no. 1 (October 2004): 39.

Weiner, Howard. "Friedheim's Reservoir: A Failed Precursor to the Trombone Water Key." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 17 (2005): 81–84.

_____. "When is an Alto Trombone an Alto Trombone? When is a Bass Trombone a Bass Trombone?—The Makeup of the Trombone Section in Eighteenth- and Early Nineteenth-Century Orchestras." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 17 (2005): 37–79.

Wege der Bläsermusik im südöstlichen Europa: 16. Arolser Barock-Festspiele 2001, Tagungsbericht in Zusammenarbeit mit dem Institut für Deutsche Musikkultur im Östlichen Europa, Bonn [The paths of wind music in southeast Europe: 16th Bad Arolsen Baroque Festival 2001], herausgegeben von Friedhelm Brusniak und Klaus–Peter Koch. Arolser Beiträge zur Musikforschung, Im Auftrag des Volksbildungsrings Bad Arolsen, herausgegeben von Friedhelm Brusniak, 10. Sinzig: Studio Verlag, 2004. ISBN 3895640824. OCLC 60710172.

Includes: Ralf Martin Jäger, "Janitscharenmusik in Österreich zwischen 1640 und 1740" [Janissary music in Austria between 1640 and 1740] (pp. 13–36); Klaus–Peter Koch, "Die Migration deutscher und tschechischer Bläser aus den böhmischen Ländern nach Osten im 18. Jahrhundert" [The migration of German and Czech wind musicians from the Bohemian lands to the east in the eighteenth century] (37–48); Darja Koter, "Entwicklung der Bläsermusik und des Instrumentenbaus in Slowenien" [The development of wind music and instrument-making in Slovenia] (49–65); Primož Kuret, "Militärmusikkapellen in Ljubljana" [Military bands in Ljubljana] (91–110); Helmut Loos, "Bläserkammermusik—Komposition und soziale Funktion" [Wind chamber music: composition and social function] (111–18); Darina Múdra, "Das Ensemble des Zipser Gespans Stefan Csáky in der Ostslowakei in den Jahren 1771–1780" [The ensemble of the Zipser (German-speaking Romanian) count Stefan Csáky in east Slovakia in the years 1771–1780] (119–29); Eva Szórádová, "Die Bläsermusik in Bratislava: Musik, Musikanten, Instrumente, Instrumentenbauer" [Wind music in Bratislava: music, musicians, instruments, instrument-makers] (131–41); Erich Tremmel, "Feldmusik—Harmoniemusik—Türkische Musik: Begriffsbestimmung, Traditionen, Ausbreitung" [Field music, *harmonie* music, Turkish music: definition, traditions,

dissemination] (143–50); Hermann Ullrich, “Naturtöne zur Ehre Gottes: Süddeutsche Hirtenhörner im liturgischen Gebrauch des 18./19. Jahrhunderts” [Natural tones to the honor of God: south German shepherds’ horns in the liturgical practice of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries] (151–81).

The Wind Band and its Repertoire: Two Decades of Research as Published in the College Band Directors National Association Journal. Compiled and edited by Michael Votta, Jr. The Donald Hunsberger Wind Library. Miami: Warner Bros. Publications, 2003. ISBN 0757918336. OCLC 57169022.

Wolyneć, Gregory James. “Johann Nepomuk Went: A Bohemian Success Story.” *Journal of Band Research* 40, no. 1 (fall 2004): 53–65.

Young, Frederick J. “Červený Compensating Double Tuba: Visit to Geretsreid.” *ITEA Journal* 33, no. 3 (spring 2006): 76–78.

Corrected title:

Cottrell, Jeffrey. “I. H. Odell’s 1899 *The Imperial Method: An Examination in Regard to Ornamentation Practice of Late Nineteenth and Early Twentieth-Century Brass Performance.*” *ITEA Journal* 32, no. 1 (fall 2004): 73–77.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521–3042); <http://www.umi.com/hp/Products/Dissertations.html>. The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

*Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. A second edition of his book *The Recorder: A Research and Information Guide (with Richard Griscom)* was published by Routledge, New York, in 2003. He is currently writing a book on the New Orleans jazz group Astral Project and a history of the recorder for Yale University Press.*

See discussions, stats, and author profiles for this publication at:
<https://www.researchgate.net/publication/240792097>

Bibliography of Writings About Historic Brass Instruments, 2006-2007

Article in *Historic Brass Society Journal* · January 2007

DOI: 10.2153/0120070011005

CITATIONS

0

READS

28

1 author:



David Lasocki

Indiana University Bloomington

39 PUBLICATIONS **29** CITATIONS

SEE PROFILE

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 2006–07

Compiled by David Lasocki

This annual series of bibliographies lists writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, making, original performance situations, performers, performance practices, repertoire, and depiction in works of art through the nineteenth century. Interviews with modern performers of historic brass instruments are also included, but not reports on conferences and workshops unless they contain significant historical information. The present bibliography covers items that reached me between July 2006 and September 2007. I would be grateful if readers could notify me of any omissions or errors.

The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles in European languages. Unpublished books and articles as well as works-in-progress have been excluded. For the sake of completeness, the articles that have appeared in *Historic Brass Society Journal* and *Historic Brass Society Newsletter* are included, even though they should already be familiar to readers.

For the most part the bibliography is unannotated, although here and there I have added brief descriptive annotations to clarify the contents, scope, or bibliographic linkages of an item. My English translations of all foreign titles are given in square brackets after the original titles. Advice about where to obtain the items may be found at the end of the bibliography.

Ahrens, Christian. "The Inventory of the Gotha Court Orchestra in 1750." *Galpin Society Journal* 60 (2007): 37–44.

_____. "Metallic Mutes used in the Eighteenth Century." *Galpin Society Journal* 60 (2007): 220–23.

Albrecht, Theodore. "Beethoven's Brass Players: New Discoveries in Composer–Performer Relations." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 18 (2006): 47–72.

Arnsted, Jürgen Voigt, and Kenyon Wilson. "The Great Danish/American Tubist August C. Helleberg (1861–1936)." *I TEA Journal* 33, no. 2 (winter 2006): 66–67.

Bailey, Wayne, Patrick Miles, Alan Siebert, William Stanley, and Thomas Stein. *Teaching Brass: a Resource Manual*. 2nd ed. Boston: McGraw-Hill, 2008. ISBN [978]0073526584. OCLC 67773746.

Ballaster, Jordi. "Music in the Sixteenth-century Catalan Painting." *Music in Art: International Journal for Music Iconography* 31, no. 1–2 (spring–fall 2006): 132–42.

Barbieri, Patrizio. "The Speaking Trumpet: Developments of Della Porta's 'Ear Spectacles' (1589–1967)." *Studi musicali* 33 (2004): 205–47.

Best, Terence. "A Newly Discovered *Water Music* Source." *Händel-Jahrbuch* 52 (2006): 225–34.

Binder, Fernando, and Paulo Castagna. "Trombetas, clarins, pistónes e cornetas no século XIX e as fontes para a história dos instrumentos de sopro no Brasil [*Trombetas, clarins, pistónes, and cornetas in the nineteenth century and resources for the history of wind instruments in Brazil*]." *Música hodie* 5, no. 1 (2005): 11–20. Includes abstract in English.

Concerns the terminology of the cornet and trumpet in nineteenth-century Brazilian sources.

Blaut, Stephan. "Hornfessel, Quasten und das inhaltsreiche Detail: Zur Ausstattung der Jägerhörner in der Dresdner Rüstkammer [Cord, tassels, and the full detail: on the trappings of the hunting horns in the Dresden armory]." In *Theatrum Instrumentorum Dresdense*, 39–46.

Brass Scholarship in Review: Proceedings of the Historic Brass Society Conference, Cité de la Musique, Paris, 1999. Stewart Carter, ed. Bucina: Historic Brass Society Series, 6. Hillsdale, NY: Pendragon Press, 2006. ISBN [978]1576471050. OCLC 71005819.

Papers presented at the symposium "Les journées des cuivres anciens" (Early Brass Days), March 1999. See under entries for Carter, De Keyser, Downey, Ericson, Habla, Hachenberg, McGrattan, Murray, Myers and Campbell, Philip, Sluchin and Dana, Stradner, Tarr, and Waterhouse. Also includes Jeffrey Nussbaum, "Brass Days in Paris" (vii), Stewart Carter, "Introduction" (ix), Matthew Hafar, "Reports on Discussion Sessions. Brass Recordings Session with Andrew Parrott" (289-90), Matthew Hafar, "Pedagogy Session" (291-92).

Brighton, Charley. "Collecting Old Euphoniums: A History." *ITEA Journal* 33, no. 4 (summer 2006): 70–73.

Buckholz, Chris. "Performance Practice for Eighteenth Century Solo Trombone Literature." *ITA Journal* 35, no. 1 (January 2007): 48–50.

Carter, Stewart. "Trombone Ensembles of the Moravian Brethren in America: New Avenues for Research." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 77-109.

- Chen, Jen-Yen. "The Sachsen-Hildburghausen Kapelle and the Symphonies of Christoph Willibald Gluck." *Ad Parnassum: A Journal of Eighteenth- and Nineteenth-Century Instrumental Music* 1, no. 2 (October 2003): 81–109.
- Contorno, Nicholas J. "Bands of the Civil War." *The Instrumentalist* 59, no. 8 (April 2005): 44, 46, 48, 50.
- Cziba, Gisela and Jozsef. "Die Dresdner Hoftrompeten des 18. Jahrhunderts [The Dresden court trumpets of the eighteenth century]." In *Theatrum Instrumentorum Dresdense*, 47–63.
- De Keyser, Ignace. "Adolphe Sax and the Paris Opéra." Ed. Keith Polk. In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 133–69.
- Downey, Peter. "Continuity and Innovation in Music for the *Trompettes de Roy* around 1700." *Basler Jahrbuch für historische Musikpraxis* 30 (2006): 37–50.
- _____. "Sir Tristram's Measures of Blowing, Jacques du Fouilloux, and the English Hunting Horn Repertory of the Baroque Era." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 13–41.
- Ericson, John. "Friedrich Gumpert (1841–1906) and the Performing Technique of the Valved Horn in Late-nineteenth-century Germany." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 223–35.
- Everett, Micah Paul. "The Return to the Slide from the Valve Trombone by Late Nineteenth and Early Twentieth-century Trombonists including Arthur Pryor (1870–1942)." D.M.A. document, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 2005. OCLC 63179827.
- Fontana, Eszter. "Musikinstrumente in höfischen Kunstkammern ungarischer Adliger im 15. bis 17. Jahrhundert [Musical instruments in court chambers of curiosities of Hungarian nobles in the fifteenth to seventeenth centuries]." In *Theatrum Instrumentorum Dresdense*, 150–60.
- Franke, Veronica Mary. "Mahler's Reorchestration of Schumann's 'Spring' Symphony, Op. 38: Background, Analysis, Intentions." *Acta musicologica* 78, no. 1 (2006): 75–109.
- Gekker, Chris. "Performance Suggestions for J. S. Bach's 2nd Brandenburg Concerto." Chamber Music Connection. *ITG Journal* 31, no. 3 (March 2007): 69–70.
- Gilbert, Adam K. "The Improvising *Alta capella*, ca. 1500: Paradigms and Procedures." *Basler Jahrbuch für historische Musikpraxis* 29 (2005): 109–23.

Gimeno Blay, Francisco M. “Canite tuba, praeparentur omnes [They have blown the trumpet and made everything ready].” *Anuario musical* 60 (2005): 3–19. Includes abstract in English and Spanish.

The title is a quotation from Ezekiel 7:14.

Gozza, Paolo. “Anche i megafoni hanno un’anima: la *tromba parlante* (1678) di Geminano Montanari [Megaphones also have a soul: the “speaking trumpet” (1678) of Geminano Montanari].” *Recercare* 16 (2004): 113–31.

Greenberg, Michael. “Musical Instruments in the Archives of the French Court: The *Argenterie, Menus Plaisirs et Affaires de la Chambre*, 1733–1792.” *Journal of the American Musical Instrument Society* 32 (2006): 5–79.

Grenfell, Mary-Jo. “An Analysis of the Wind Scoring Techniques of Antonín Dvořák and Transcriptions of Selected Works for Wind Ensemble.” D.A. document, University of Northern Colorado, 2004. OCLC 60678629.

Guide to the Tuba Repertoire: The New Tuba Source Book. Compiled and ed. R. Winston Morris and Daniel Perantoni. Indiana Repertoire Guides. Bloomington & Indianapolis: Indiana University Press, 2006. ISBN [978]0253347633. OCLC 64098491.

Guion, David M. “The Missing Link: The Trombone in Italy in the 17th and 18th Centuries.” *Early Music* 34, no. 2 (May 2006): 225–32.

_____. “Wind Bands in Towns, Courts, and Churches: Middle Ages to Baroque.” *Journal of Band Research* 42, no. 2 (spring 2007): 19–56.

Habla, Bernhard. “Printed Editions of Music for Brass Bands and Military Bands by German and Austrian Publishers in the Second Half of the Nineteenth Century.” In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 171–85.

Hachenberg, Karl. “Evaluation of the Composition and Technological Properties of Historical Brass in Instrument Manufacture of the Sixteenth to Eighteenth Centuries.” In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 53–75.

Hageman, Justin Edward. “The Horn: A Discussion of the Nationalistic Schools of Horn Performance and the Players and Composers who Influenced Them.” D.M.A. document, University of California, Los Angeles, 2005. OCLC 61718800.

Hansen, Richard K. *The American Wind Band: A Cultural History*. Chicago: GIA Publications, 2005. ISBN [978]1579994670. OCLC 57709974.

Based on his Ph.D. diss. of the same title, University of Minnesota, 2003.

- Herissone, Rebecca. "Robert Pindar, Thomas Busby, and the Mysterious Scoring of Henry Purcell's 'Come Ye Sons of Art.'" *Music & Letters* 88, no. 1 (February 2007): 1–48.
- Honea, Sion M. "Christian Rummel's Suites for Military Band." *Ad Parnassum: Journal of Eighteenth- and Nineteenth-Century Instrumental Music* 4 = no. 7 (April 2006): 63–85.
- Honea, (Ted) Sion M., and Shannon M. Garrett. "Dauprat and the Cadenza Tradition." *The Horn Call* 37, no. 1 (October 2006): 55–58.
- Humphries, John. "W. Brown & Sons: A Nearly Forgotten Name in British Brass Making." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 18 (2006): 1–15.
- Hunsaker, Leigh Anne. "Edward H. Tarr and the Historic Brass Revival." *ITG Journal* 35, no. 2 (January 2007): 35–39.
- Isenhour, Justin. "Approaching the Albrechtsberger." *ITA Journal* 35, no. 2 (April 2007): 20–23.
Concerns Johann Georg Albrechtsberger's Concerto in B \flat for trombone and string orchestra.
- Ivanoff, Vladimir. "Europäische und nahöstliche Instrumente und Instrumentalpraxis um 1500 im Spiegel von Reiseberichten und verwandten Quellentypen [European and Near-Eastern instruments and instrumental practice around 1500 as reflected in travel accounts and related types of sources]." *Basler Jahrbuch für historische Musikpraxis* 29 (2005): 173–89.
- Klaus, Sabine K. "E \flat Trumpet by Gustav Adolf Eschenbach ca. 1900." Historical Instrument Window. *ITG Journal* 31, no. 3 (March 2007): 53.
- _____. "Miniature King Liberty Trumpet by H. N. White." Historical Instrument Window. *ITG Journal* 31, no. 2 (January 2007): 54.
- _____. "Trumpet in F and Cornopean in B \flat by John August Köhler." Historical Instrument Window. *ITG Journal* 31, no. 4 (June 2007): 60.
- Kridel, Craig. "America's First Serpents: Travels through the Moravian Communities of Pennsylvania." *ITEA Journal* 34, no. 2 (winter 2007): 84–86.
- _____. "The Original Intent of the Serpent." *ITEA Journal* 34, no. 3 (spring 2007): 74–77.

- Lightbourne, Ruth. "Annibale Stabile and Performance Practice at Two Roman Institutions." *Early Music* 32, no. 2 (May 2004): 271–85.
Includes payments to brass players.
- Madeuf, Jean-François, and Graham Nicholson. "Some Experience [with] and Reflections on Playing the Baroque Trumpet." *Historic Brass Society Newsletter*, no. 18 (winter 2005): 18–21.
- McGee, Timothy. "Florentine Instrumentalists and their Repertory circa 1500." *Basler Jahrbuch für historische Musikpraxis* 29 (2005): 145–59.
- McGrattan, Alexander. "Brass Instruments in Masonic Ceremonies: the Building of 'the Athens of the North.'" In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 43–52.
- Monelle, Raymond. *The Musical Topic: Hunt, Military and Pastoral*. Bloomington & Indianapolis: Indiana University Press, 2006. ISBN 0253347661, 9780253347664. OCLC 63245381.
- Montagu, Jeremy. "Mediæval Woodwind Instruments of Silver." *Galpin Society Journal* 60 (2007): 224–28.
Besides shawms and a cornemuse made of silver, the article discusses trumpets and "clarions," which were apparently distinguished by their length.
- Moore, Brian. "Haydn's Trumpet Concerto: The Tempo and Articulation of the *Andante* Movement." *ITG Journal* 35, no. 2 (January 2007): 40–42.
- Murray, Russell E., Jr. "The History of the Bancho Family of Trumpeters: a Study of Patronage and Welfare in Renaissance Parma." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 1–12.
- Myers, Arnold, and D. Murray Campbell. "Trumpet Design and Acoustical Characteristics." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 251–74.
- Herbert Myers. "The Musical Miniatures of the *Triumphzug* of Maximilian I." *Galpin Society Journal* 60 (2007): 3–28.
- Odello, Denise. "Re-contextualizing Music: Emergent Community and Values in the Brass Band Movement of Nineteenth-century England." Ph.D. diss., University of California, Santa Barbara, 2005. OCLC 74459674.
- Paduch, Arno. "Festmusiken zu Frankfurter Kaiserwahlen und Krönigen des 17. und 18. Jahrhunderts [Festival music of the Frankfurt imperial elections and coronations

of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries]." *Die Musikforschung* 59, no. 3 (2006): 211–32.

Philip, Robert. "Brass Playing before Globalization." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 275–88.

Polk, Keith. "Instrumental Music c.1500: Players, Makers, and Musical Contexts." *Basler Jahrbuch für historische Musikpraxis* 29 (2005): 21–34.

Ragni, Stefano. "Carlo Della Giacoma, un musicista militare tra Risorgimento e Anarchia: La vita [Carlo Della Giacoma: a military musician between the Risorgimento and the Anarchy: life]." *Nuova Rivista Musicale Italiana* 35, no. 4 (October–December 2001): 535–62.

Reeves, Gary L. "A New Theory of the Origins of Horn Playing." *The Horn Call* 36 (February 2006): 107–8.

Rice, Albert R. "An Italian Translation of Eugène Roy's Method for Keyed Trumpet." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 18 (2006): 41–45.

Riner, Nicole. "Is the Study of Baroque Performance Practice Worth Your Time?" *ITEA Journal* 33, no. 3 (spring 2006): 80–81.

Rohlfing, Robert. J. "Trumpet Performance Legacy in American Orchestras in the Music of Ludwig van Beethoven, with Emphasis on Editorial Changes in Symphony No. 9." D.M.A. document, University of Wisconsin–Madison, 2006.

Rostirola, Giancarlo. "Musicisti della Scuola Napoletana nei disegni di Pier Leone Ghezzi (1718–1754) [Musicians of the Neapolitan school in the drawings of Pier Leone Ghezzi (1718–1754)]." *Nuova Rivista Musicale Italiana* 38, no. 3 (September 2004): 311–40.

Includes two hunting horn players.

Savan, Jamie. "The Cornett and Performance Practice in Germany, c.1511-1545, with Particular Reference to Divisions Technique." Ph.D. diss., University of Birmingham, 2005.

Sluchin, Benny. "Kopprasch Studies Adapted for Low Brass: The Popular Op. 6 and the Forgotten Op. 5." *ITA Journal* 31, no. 2 (April 2003): 30–36.

_____, and Pierre Dana. "Off-centered Embouchure in Brass Playing." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 237–50.

Stephen, J. Drew. "To Stop or not to Stop: Nodal Venting and Hand-Stopping on the Baroque Horn." *The Horn Call* 37, no. 3 (May 2007): 59–65.

Steuere, Wolfram. "Michael Praetorius' *Theatrum Instrumentorum* 1620, Philipp Hainhofers Dresdner Reiserelation von 1629 und die Inventare der Dresdner Kunstkammer [Michael Praetorius' *Theatrum instrumentorum* (1620), Philipp Hainhofer's Dresden travel diary of 1629, and the inventory of the Dresden chamber of curiosities]." In *Theatrum Instrumentorum Dresdense*, 233–40.

Stewart, Robb. "Cornet in E \flat by E. G. Wright." *Historical Instrument Window. ITG Journal* 31, no. 1 (October 2006): 58.

Stradner, Gerhard. "Christian Friedrich Daniel Schubart's Remarks on the Cornett." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 111-19.

Street, Ronda Elaine. "Chamber Wind Transcriptions of Selected Eighteenth-century Horn Concerti based on an Analysis of Period Wind Scoring Techniques. (D.A. document, University of Northern Colorado, 2006. OCLC 71314528.

Swisher, Eric. "Georg Philipp Telemann's Use of the Trumpet in Tafelmusik II—TWV 55: D1 (1733) together with Three Recitals of Selected Works by Kennan, Torelli, Chaynes and Others." D.M.A. document, University of North Texas, 2005.

Tarr, Edward H. "Oskar Böhme Revisited: Young Musicians' Training, Instruments, and Repertoire in the Late Nineteenth and Early Twentieth Centuries." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 187-221.

Theatrum Instrumentorum Dresdense: Bericht über die Tagungen zu historischen Musikinstrumenten Dresden 1996, 1998 und 1999 [Dresden theater of instruments: report on the conferences on historical musical instruments in Dresden, 1996, 1998, and 1999]. Herausgegeben von Wolfram Steuere und Hans-Günter Ottenberg unter Mitarbeit von Bernhard Hentrich und Wolfgang Mende. Schriften zur mitteldeutschen Musikgeschichte im Auftrag der Ständigen Konferenz mitteldeutsche Barockmusik in Sachsen, Sachsen-Anhalt und Thüringen e.V., Bd. 11. Schneverdingen: Karl Dieter Wagner, 2003. OCLC 59818595.

See entries under Blaut, Csiba, Fontana, and Steuere.

Voss, Egon. "Prima e seconda prattica? Beethovens Musik für Bläser und ihre Position im Gesamtwerk [Prima and seconda prattica? Beethoven's music for winds and its position in his oeuvre]." *Die Musikforschung* 58, no. 4 (October–December 2005): 353–60.

- Waterhouse, William. "Gautrot–Aîné, First of the Moderns." In *Brass Scholarship in Review*, 121–32.
- Weiner, Howard. "The Quint-terz-tenor Trombone: An Enigma Solved." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 18 (2006): 37–40.
- Weller, Enrico. "Der Blasinstrumentenbau im Vogtland von den Anfängen bis zum Beginn des 20. Jahrhunderts [Wind-instrument making in Vogtland from its origins to the beginning of the twentieth century]." *Instrumentenbau Zeitschrift, Musik International* 59 (March–April 2005): 58–59.
- Wells, Wayne W. "Music for Trombone and Voice from the Hapsburg Empire: An Historical Overview with Tenor Trombone Transcriptions." D.M.A. document, University of Maryland, College Park, 2005.
- Wilson Kimber, Marian. "Fanny Hensel Meets the Boys in the Band: The Brass Transcriptions of *Gartenlieder*, Op. 3." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 18 (2006): 17–36.

Where to Obtain Sources

All the books, many of the theses and dissertations, and most of the articles listed in this bibliography may be obtained on interlibrary loan from your university or college library (if you are affiliated with such an institution) or your local public library. Show the librarian this bibliography as verification of the item; the OCLC number (where given) will aid in obtaining the books, theses, and dissertations.

Some of the dissertations can be purchased from University Microfilms International, 300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106 (phone [800] 521–3042); < <http://www.umi.com/hp/Products/Dissertations.html>. > The theses and the remainder of the dissertations can generally be purchased from the university where they were submitted.

Dr. David Lasocki, a prolific writer about the history of wind instruments, is Head of Reference Services in the William and Gayle Cook Music Library at Indiana University. He is currently writing a history of the recorder for Yale University Press and a book on the New Orleans jazz group Astral Project.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WRITINGS ABOUT HISTORIC BRASS INSTRUMENTS, 2010–2011

Compiled by Eva M. Heater

This annual series of bibliographies includes listings of writings about Western brass instruments, their makers, instrument construction, original performances situations (including jazz), performers, performance practice, repertoire, and depictions in works of art from Antiquity through the first five decades of the twentieth century. The items listed comprise books, theses and dissertations, and periodical articles published in European languages. This bibliography includes items from June 2010–June 2011, plus a straggler from 2008. It does not include reviews of books or recordings.

Araya, Luis M. “Two Newly-Discovered Pieces for Soprano, Trumpet, Strings, and Continuo by Neapolitan Eighteenth-century Composers Domenico Saro and Gennaro Manna: Performance Editions.” D.M.A. document, Arizona State University, 2011. AAT3449933.

Baker, Julian. “Basic Right Hand Positions and Pitch Considerations When Playing the Natural, Classical Horn.” *The Horn Player* 7, no. 2 (Autumn 2010): 32.

Biermann, Joanna Cobb. “Trumpets in 18th Century Darmstadt Symphonies.” *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 2 (January 2011): 75–76.

Billiet, Jeroen. *200 Years of Belgian Horn School? A Comprehensive Study of the Horn in Belgium 1789–1960*. Ghent: Orpheus Institute, 2008.
Based on the author’s dissertation. See review by Jeffrey Snedeker in this issue.

Brown, Daniel Richard. “A History and Analysis of the Advancements in Jazz Tuba Performance from 1940 until 2010.” D.M.A. document, University of Arizona, 2010. AAT3423828.

Chenworth, Richard. “Orchestral Notes: Performing on Natural Horn for Valve Horn Players. An Interview with Paul Austin.” *The Horn Call* 41, no. 1 (October 2010): 41–45.

Clark, Andrew. “Methods of Playing the Baroque Horn.” *The Horn Player* 7, no. 2 (Autumn 2010): 28–30.

Crown, Tom. "The Chicago Symphony Orchestra Trumpet Section 1902–1932." *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 4 (June 2011): 38–47.

Danckwardt, Marianne. "Hornsignale in Joseph Haydns Sinfonien." *Archiv für Musikwissenschaft* 67, no. 1 (2010): 36–44.

De Keyser, Ignace. "An Eighteenth-Century Congolese Horn in the Shape of a Cornett." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 22 (2010): 91–102.

Diprose, Mike. "Holier Than Thou." *Early Music Review* 138 (October 2010): 14–15.

From the abstract: "Presents some comparisons between the 'real' (natural) trumpet and its modern counterpart (or 'strainer'). To perform on the strainer is not honest, and more trumpeters should master the earlier instrument."

Dixon, Gavin. "Farewell to the Kidshifter: The Decline of the G Bass Trombone in the UK 1950–1980." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 22 (2010): 75–89.

Dullat, Gunter. *Verzeichnis der Holz- und Metallblasinstrumentenmacher auf deutschsprachigem Gebiet von 1500 bis Mitte des 20. Jahrhunderts*. Tutzing: Hans Schneider, 2010.

Eliason, Robert E. "Jesse's Tuba." *Newsletter of the American Musical Instrument Society* 39, no. 1 (Spring 2010): 11–14.

A description of an over-the-shoulder tuba marked "Gautrot Brevete a Paris," found in the rafters of a restaurant near Hanover, New Hampshire.

Falvey, Joseph. "An Equipment Guide to Performing Baroque Music." D.M.A. document, University of Miami, 2011. AAT3456330.

Friesenhagen, Andreas. "Haydn's Symphonies: Problems of Instrumentation and Performance Tradition." *Early Music* 39, no. 2 (May 2011): 253–62.

From the abstract: "[I]t can be established from the sources that before 1768 Haydn did not write for horns in high C and that the parts for trumpets and timpani in some of the early symphonies did not originate with the composer. The fact that these alternative instrumentations, though inauthentic, have found widespread acceptance in today's performances is demonstrated by selected recordings from the 1950s to the present."

Gamble, Stephen, and William, Lynch. *Dennis Brain: a Life in Music*. Denton, TX: University of North Texas Press, 2011. ISBN 9781574413076.

Guion, David M. *A History of the Trombone*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2010. ISBN 9780810874459.

- Haim, Albert. "The Mystery Trombonist in Bix and Tram's Singin' the Blues: Bill Rank or Miff Mole?" *International Association of Jazz Record Collectors Journal* 44/2 (June 2011): 32–34.
- Hentoff, Nat. "The Everlasting Louis Armstrong." *Jazz Times* 40, no. 7 (September 2010): 80.
- Herbert, Trevor. "Trombone Glissando: A Case Study in Continuity and Change in Brass Instrument Performance Idioms." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 22 (2010): 1–18.
- Herbert, Trevor and Arnold Myers. "Music for the Multitude: Accounts of Brass Bands Entering Enderby Jackson's Crystal Palace Contests in the 1860s." *Early Music* 38, no. 4 (November 2010): 571–83.
- Henssen, Ralph. "The Use of Trumpet on Board Ships of the Dutch East India Company." *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 2 (January 2011): 27–37.
- Hill, John Walter. "Thematic Transformation, Folksong and Nostalgia in Brahms's Horn Trio op. 40." *Musical Times* 152, no. 1914 (Spring 2011): 20–24.
- Jukic, Nina. "Music-Iconographical Analysis of Ivan Ranger's Music-Making: the Angels in St. Jerome's Church, Strigova." (English translation of original title, "Glazbeno-ikonografska analiza anđela svirača na frškama Ivana Rangera u crkvi sv. Jērolima u štrigovi"). *Croatian Musicological Review* 41, no. 2 (December 2010): 221–35.
- From the abstract: "St. Jerome's Church in Štrigova was decorated with frescoes by Ivan Krstitelj Ranger in 1744. Among other pictures, Ranger also depicted there three music-making angels: two trumpet players and one timpani player. Their role in the iconographical program of the church is very interesting, since trumpets and timpani were used throughout history to accompany ceremonies and military campaigns. . . . In Croatia, music iconography is almost an unknown field. Since Koraljka Kos published a comprehensive study on the music instruments in Croatian Mediaeval art, no one has systematically dealt with the problem of music iconography in Croatia."
- Kampmann, Bruno. "A Serpent Collection (continuation)." *The Serpent Newsletter* (27 September 2010): 13–14.
- . "Exposition d'instruments a St Cyr au Mont d'or." *Larigot* (March 2011): 4–5.
- . "Le cor de Leopold Dancla: la naissance du piston Perinet?" *Larigot* (March 2011): 18–21.

Klaus, Sabine. "Trumpet in G by Charles Mahillon Brussels, ca. 1878." *Historical Instrument Window. International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 3 (March 2011): 46.

———. "Two Russian Horns for the Notes F and F-Sharp." *Historical Instrument Window. International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 4 (June 2011): 58.

———. "Trumpet in B-flat by Joseph Lathrop Allen." *Historical Instrument Window. International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 1 (October 2010): 56.

Kridel, Craig. "Resurrecting the Bass Cornetto." *International Tuba Euphonium Journal* 38, no. 1 (Fall 2010): 86–88.

Lamb, Andy. "The Case of the Waterloo Serpent." *The Serpent Newsletter* (27 September 2010): 6–8.

Lasocki, David. "New Light on the Early History of the Keyed Bugle, Part II: More on England and Ireland; the United States." *Historic Brass Society Journal* 22 (2010): 19–54.

Lomas, Mike. "The Case of the Waterloo Serpent Part Deux." *The Serpent Newsletter* (1 April 2011): 8–9.

MacLean, Amanda. "The Sad Fate and Splendid Career of the Trumpeter of Fyvie." *Folk Music Journal* 10, no. 1 (2011): 89–101.

From the abstract: "The sixth character, the trumpeter Andrew Lammie, has until now been known only from the ballad and its accompanying traditions. Archive documents, however, demonstrate that a man by the name of Andrew Lambie, or Lamb, lived in Scotland throughout the last quarter of the seventeenth century and on into the eighteenth, and that he had the right name, age, profession, and marital status to be the Andrew Lammie of the ballad. Furthermore, he was living in the right place, Edinburgh."

Madeuf, Jean-Francois. "The Revival of the Natural Trumpet in the Baroque Repertory: Utopian or Not?" *Early Music* 38, no. 2 (May 2010): 203–04.

Mayfield, Nathan. "Performing Baroque Trumpet in a Chamber Music Setting." *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 4 (June 2011): 78–79.

Nicholson, Graham. "The Unnatural Trumpet." *Early Music* 38, no. 2 (May 2010): 193–202.

Palm, Paul Werner. "Baroque Solo and Homogeneous Ensemble Trombone Repertoire: a Lecture-recital Supporting and Demonstrating Performance at a Pitch Standard

Derived from Primary Sources and Extant Instruments.” D.M.A. document, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, 2010. AAT3418829.

Pierre, Rene. “Jean Finck (1783–1858): facteur d’instruments de musique en cuivre a Strasbourg.” *Larigot* (March 2011): 22–25.

Proksch, Bryan. “Excavating the Trumpet’s Earliest Repertoire.” *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 3 (March 2011): 64–65.

Shook, Brian A. *Last Stop, Carnegie Hall: New York Philharmonic Trumpeter William Vacchiano*. Denton, TX: University of North Texas Press, 2011. ISBN 9781574413069.

Spell, Clint. “Trumpet in G by Carl August Muller.” Historical Instrument Window. *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 2 (January 2011): 50.

Steiger, Adrian v. “Method Books for Keyed Trumpet: New Evidence.” *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 4 (June 2011): 80–83

Stephen, J. Drew. “Haydn, the Horn, the Hunt, and Hand-Stopping.” *Historic Brass Society Journal* 22 (2010): 55–74.

Stewart, Robb. “Elbridge G. Wright: Boston Brass Instrument Craftsman 200th Anniversary.” *American Musical Instrument Society Newsletter* 40, no. 1 (Spring 2011): 9–10.

Tarr, Edward H. “The Trumpet Sonatas of Domenico Gabrielli (1649–1690).” *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 1 (October 2010): 75–76.

Tatum, Bradley. “Incorporating Classical Hand Horn Aesthetics into Modern Horn Playing.” *The Horn Call* 41, no. 3 (May 2011): 62–64.

Treybig, Joel. “J.S. Bach’s Obbligato: Beautiful and Significant Curiosities from BWV 5, 46 & 90.” *International Trumpet Guild Journal* 35, no. 3 (March 2011): 13–28.

Verdie, Jean Claude. “Le Cor Ascendant.” *Larigot* (March 2011): 12–16.

Watel, Denis. “Tourneurs et facteurs d’instruments a vent: les Gambette a Verdun au 18eme siècle.” *Larigot* (March 2011): 6–11.

Yeo, Douglas. “A Good Old Note: The Serpent in Thomas Hardy’s World and Works.” *The Hardy Review* 13, no. 1 (Spring 2011), 32–48.

Zirpolo, Michael P. *Mr. Trumpet: the Trials, Tribulations, and Triumphs of Bunny Berrigan*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2011. ISBN 9780810881525.

Where to Obtain Sources

Recently it has become easier for those affiliated with colleges to obtain copies of dissertations. ProQuest (UMI) has thousands of titles of American theses and dissertations available for free pdf download for those affiliated with many universities. Please check with your favorite librarian to find out if your university library has this service. Print copies may also be purchased from UMI Dissertation Publishing, <http://www.proquest.com/en-US/products/dissertations/orderingres.shtml>, or by telephone, (800) 521-0600. OCLC numbers and ISBN numbers, when available, have been provided to help with this process. Most, if not all of the items in this bibliography are available via interlibrary loan, and these numbers will also help when included with interlibrary loan requests. (Your favorite librarian from your university or local public library will thank you for the extra information.) Remember all those thousands of hours you have spent huddled over a photocopier? If your university subscribes to *International Index to Music Periodicals Full Text*, articles from many music publications can be downloaded in PDF format, making photocopying no longer necessary. However, in spite of all the technological marvels from the last twenty years that make research somewhat less burdensome, please never forget that your very best resource in your research is a librarian.

Eva Marie Heater is an active performer and teacher of horn and natural horn in the southern Connecticut area. She holds the Master of Music degree from the Yale University School of Music and the Bachelor of Music degree from the American Conservatory of Music. In addition to playing natural horn in the American Baroque Orchestra, she is also the author of articles, reports, and recordings reviews in music journals, has maintained a private studio for many years, and has been an adjunct professor of horn at Columbia University's Teachers College. She supports her horn habit by working at the Irving S. Gilmore Music Library, Yale University.